CANADIAN EDUCATIONAL SERIES

BELLUM GALLICUM

BOOK IV.

HENDERSON

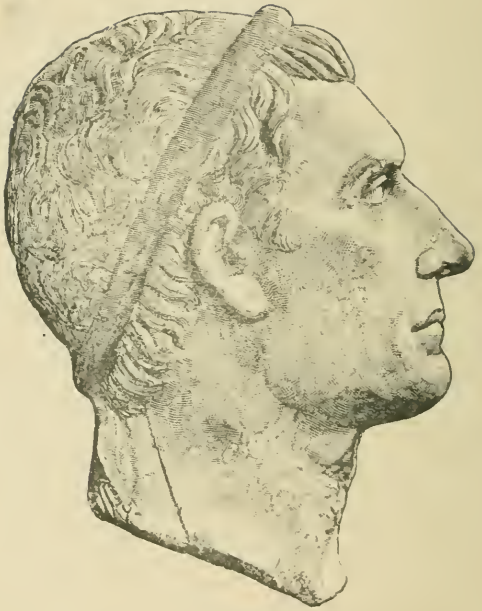
THIRD EDITION,

THE COPP CLARK CO LIMITED

ROBT.
M. LACHLIN
ST. THOMAS
ONT.
BOOKSELLER
AND
STATIONER

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Ontario Council of University Libraries

http://www.archive.org/details/caesarsbellumgal04hend



CAESAR

From a Bust in the Museum of the Louvre.

Classical Text-Book Series.

CAESAR'S
BELLUM GALLICUM,

(BOOK IV.)

WITH

INTRODUCTORY NOTICES, NOTES, COMPLETE VOCABULARY, AND A SERIES OF EXERCISES FOR RE-TRANSLATION,

FOR THE USE OF

CLASSES READING FOR DEPARTMENTAL AND UNIVERSITY EXAMINATIONS.

BY

JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.,

HEAD MASTER, ST. CATHARINES COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE.

TORONTO:

THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED,

9 FRONT STREET WEST.

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and ninety-two, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED, Toronto, Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

PREFACE.

This edition (third) of Book IV. of Caesar's Gallic War differs from the former editions merely in this respect, that the grammatical references have been adapted to the two Latin Books recently authorized by the Education department of Ontario. F. stands for First Latin Book, and P. for Primary Latin Book.

It is to be hoped that this edition will receive the same liberal reception given to the former editions of the same book.

St. Catharines Collegiate Institute,
2nd January, 1893.

4 Long West 2 0 Longitude 2 East from 4 Greenwich 6 8 10
Map No. 1.
GAUL
IN THE TIME OF CÆSAR.
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
10 20 40 60 80 100
54
52
50
MONA I.
BRITANNIA
Cenimagni
Trinobantes
Cassi
Tamesis Fl.
Ancalites
Segontiaci
Bibroci
Cantium
Deal
Dover
GERMANIA
Batavi
Usipetes
Rhenus Fl.
Insulæ Batavorum
Vacalus
Tenctori
Bacenis
Cherusci
Mosa Fl.
Menapii
Eburones
Sugambri
Silva
Ubii
Suevi
Condrusi
Aduatuci
Oppidum Aduatucorum
Morini
Geidumni
Centrones
Gradili
Levaci
Grudii
Pleumoxii
Nervii
Portus Itius
Atrebates
Nemetocenna
Ambiani
Samara Fl.
Veromandui
Samarobriva
Caleti
Bratuspantium
Bellovaci
Velocasses
Lexovii
Uneliocasses
Sues
Suessiones
Aisne Fl.
Noviodunum
Remi
Bibrax
Durocortorum
Ambiarii
Mediomatrici
Treveri
Pæmani
Condrusi
Eburones
Segni
Condrusi
Germani
Cisrhenani
Ardenna Silva
Moselle Fl.
Mosella
Leuci
Nemetes
Vangiones
Sequani
Matrona
Isara (Oise)
IV. 17
IV. 12
II. 10

ARMORICA
Curiosolitae
Diablintes
Condate
Veneti
Redones
Namnetes
Andes
Ligeri Fl.
Lemovices
Turones
CELTAE SIVE GALLIA
Pictones
Limonum
OCEANUS
ATLANTICUS
Lemovices
Petrocorii
Duronius Fl.
Nitiobriges
(Elentheri)
Ottis Fl.
Cocosates
Tarusates
Sontiates
Ptianii
AQUITANIA
Tarnis Fl.
Atur Fl.
Sibuzates
Cantabri
PYRENAEI M.
HISPANIA
Cenomani
Aulerci Diablintres
Genabum
Noviodunum
Avaricum
Boii
Gorgobina
Arverni
Gergovia
Gabali
Vellavii
Vellaunodunum
Agedicum
Genoves
Lingones
Alesia
Mandubii
Boii
Decetia
Brannovii
Elaver Fl.
Auleri Brannovices
Bibracte
Camulonum
Matisco
Ambarri
Rhodanus
Allobroges
Vienna
Gratianopolis
Ocelum
Caturiges
Vocontii
Vocates
Caturiges
Vocontii
Cavari
Rhodanus Fl.
Isara Fl.
Druentia Fl.
Massilia
Narbo Martius
Tolosa
Carcaso
Tectosages
Volcae
Garumni
Garumna Fl.
Aturi
Ausci
Iberi
Ilibera
Helvetii
Leucii
Latobrigi
Boii
Tulingi
Raurici
Vesontio
Dubis Fl.
Lemanus
Genava
Helvetii
Pagus Tigurinus
Pagus Verbigenus
Pagus Salassi
Lepontii
Centrones
Graioceli
Caturiges
Alpes Graiae
Alpes Cottiae
Alpes Maritimae
PROVINCIA
MARE INTERNUM
Sequana Fl.
Matrona Fl.
Liger Fl.
Vigenna Fl.
Carantonus Fl.
Duranius Fl.
Garumna Fl.
Ollius Fl.
Tarnis Fl.
Atax Fl.
Druentia Fl.
Rhodanus Fl.
Isara Fl.
Vindelicorum Fl.
Danubius Fl.
Rhenus Fl.
Rhenus Fl.
Vindelicorum Fl.
Danubius Fl.
Rhenus Fl.
Rhenus Fl.
Rhenus

LIFE OF CAESAR.

Caius Julius Caesar[1] was born on the 12th of July, B.C. 100.[2] He was thus six years younger than Cicero and Pompey. His family (*gens Julia*) was not merely one of the oldest, but was also one of the most respected of the patrician families of the capital. It traced its descent to Iülus, son of Aeneas, and thus through Venus claimed to be of divine origin. It also embraced among its members many who distinguished themselves in the service of the state.

BIRTH.

His family

Little is known of Caesar's father, except that he held at some time or other the office of *praetor*, and that he died suddenly at Pisa, B.C. 84. The education of young Caesar seems to have been directed chiefly by his mother, *Aurelia*, who was a woman of lofty ambition and a firm believer in the noble destiny of her son. His early training, according to the fashion of that day, consisted in acquiring a knowledge of numbers, grammar, music, and in practising physical exercises. He is also said to have devoted considerable time to verse making.[3]

Caesar's father

[1] Each Roman citizen had usually *three names:* called the *praenomen* (marking the *individual*), the *nomen* (designating the *gens* or *clan*), and the *cognomen* (telling the *family*). Thus Caius is a *praenomen*, Julius is a *nomen*, and Caesar, a *cognomen*. Sometimes an *agnomen* was added for honorary distinction as *Africanus* to P. Cornelius Scipio.

[2] Mommsen (Hist. of Rome, Vol. III., 15,) argues that Caesar was born 102 B.C. His main reason for assigning this date is that the *lex annalis*, which prescribed the minimum age at which a citizen could hold certain offices, was observed in Caesar's case. By this law no one could hold the quaestorship before he was 31, the aedileship before 37, the praetorship before 41, the consulship before 43. By referring to the chronology of his life, the plausibility of the argument would appear. In answer to this we may say that: (1) the law was not always observed; (2) Suetonius represents Caesar as 16 years of age when his father died; (3) Plutarch, Suetonius and Appian, state that Caesar was 56 years of age when he was assassinated.

[3] *Laudes Herculis* and *Oedipus* were among his youthful poems.

Related to Marius.

His aunt Julia was married to C. Marius. To this relationship may be ascribed the fact that Caesar at the early age of 14 was appointed to the office of priest of Jove (*flamen dialis*), by virtue of which he was a member of the sacred college and received a handsome income. We may also ascribe to his connection with Marius the bent of his political opinions. Caesar after the death of the great dictator led the popular or democratic party as opposed to the senatorial or aristocratic.

Betrothed to Cossutia.

He was at first betrothed to Cossutia, a wealthy heiress, but he broke off the engagement on the death of his father. In the following year (83 B.C.), he married Cornelia, daughter of L.

Marries Cornelia.

Cornelius Cinna, the leader of the popular party and the avowed opponent of Sylla. This union was displeasing to Sylla, who ordered Caesar to divorce Cornelia. This Caesar refused to do. Through the intercession of Aurelius Cotta, Caesar was at length pardoned.

Goes to the East, and serves his first campaign.

In consequence of having thwarted the will of Sylla, Caesar incurred his enmity and found it unsafe to remain at Rome. He went to the East, and served his first campaign under M. Minucius Thermus. He seems to have remained in the East for about four years, distinguishing himself for personal bravery at the siege of Mitylene and the war against the Cilician pirates.

Returns home.

On the report of Sylla's death, 78 B.C., he came home.

Tactics of Caesar.

The tactics that Caesar adopted at this time to further the interests of his party showed his consummate skill as a political leader. The Roman Senate had become utterly powerless to deal with the duty of administering properly the government. The lower classes filled with turbulent crowds the cities, in consequence of the free labour of the Italian provincials being in a great measure supplanted by that of slaves. Ever since the days of the Gracchi opposed to this democratic element was the Senate, conservative in its nature, being composed of men whose

Composition of the Senate.

interests were likely to suffer if the democratic element should get any power in the state. In the midway between these two

The three parties at Rome.

forces we have the wealthy class led by such men as Crassus, without any aristocratic antecedents, on the one hand opposed to democracy as men of affluence naturally are, and on the other opposed to the old families who prided themselves simply in tracing their descent through a long line of ancestors. In fact the history of Rome from the middle of the second century, B.C., down to the time of Augustus, presents little more than

the intrigues of wily politicians who by unscrupulousness endeavoured to supplant each other in the favour of the people. Caesar attempted to show that the Senatorial government of the provincials was thoroughly corrupt. He indicted Cn. Dolabella (78 B.C.) and C. Antonius (77 B.C.) for extortion. Though Caesar lost these causes, he really gained a triumph, since he proved the utter corruption of the courts which were filled by the Senatorial faction. To improve his style in oratory, he went to the school of Molo, at Rhodes. On the voyage thither Caesar's vessel was captured by pirates at Pharmacussa (now *Fermaco*), one of the Sporades. He was detained for forty days, and was not released till a ransom of $50,000 had been paid. During his detention, he is said to have joined with these marauders in their sports, and to have jestingly told them that he would, when liberated, have them crucified. This threat he afterwards made good. Landing at Miletus, he collected a small fleet, captured them, and brought them to Pergamus, where they were executed. He stayed at the school of Molo for two years.

Caesar indicts Dolabella and Antonius.

Goes to Rhodes.

Captured by pirates.

When absent from Rome, Caesar was elected *pontifex*. This office could be held only by one residing in the capital, and thus he was compelled to return. A reaction had meanwhile set in opposed to the policy of Sylla. With the Consulship of Pompey and Crassus (70 B.C.) a reform had been introduced by restoring the rights of the tribunes and the censors, and by remodelling the Senate. Both Pompey and Caesar supported these reforms. In 68 B. C., Caesar became *quaestor*, and by virtue of this office he was entitled to a seat in the Senate. He went soon after his election with Antistius Vetus into Spain, and took up his residence at *Corduba* (now *Cordova*). One of the chief duties of the quaestor was to attend the provincial assizes (*conventus*), and settle the disputes that arose between provincials. In this office he displayed a spirit of equity and moderation in striking contrast to the policy of his predecessors. His popularity gained for him many adherents, who, in after days, flocked to his standard at the battle of Munda. It was during this year that he lost his wife Cornelia.

Elected pontifex.

Reaction against Sylla's policy.

Elected quaestor.

Caesar married Pompey's cousin, Pompeia, in the following year. No doubt this union was concluded for political reasons. Pompey was now in the height of his fame. This very year he was appointed by the Gabinian law (*lex Gabinia*) sole com-

Marries Pompeia

mander of the Roman fleet to clear the coasts of the Mediterranean of the pirates who infested it. Next year he was equally successful in defeating Mithridates, king of Pontus.

Elected curule aedile.

In 65 B.C., Caesar was elected *curule aedile.* While holding this office, he increased his popularity, as well as his debts, by the costly gladiatorial shows he gave to gratify the depraved tastes of a Roman populace. He also showed his devotion to the memory of Marius by causing the trophies of that great commander, which had been destroyed by Sylla, to be replaced. Many a veteran, reading the inscriptions recounting the victories of Campi Raudii, Aquae Sextiae, and over Jugurtha, would recall the memory of the greatest soldier of the age, the deliverer of Italy, and the sturdy supporter of popular rights. In the year 63 B. C., a year noted for the conspiracy of Catiline, Caesar became *pontifex maximus.* On the trial of the conspirators, Caesar advocated the penalty of perpetual banishment, while Cato advocated the death penalty. Subsequent events proved that Caesar was right.

Caesar pontifex maximus.

Elected praetor.

In 62 B. C., Caesar was elected *praetor*, and while in this office he openly opposed the party of the Senate. On resigning the office, he went as *propraetor* to Spain, when he managed to gain money enough to pay off his enormous debts. On his return, he united with Pompey and Crassus to form the coalition called the *First Triumvirate.* Pompey may be said to have been the representative of the aristocratic classes, Caesar of the democratic, while Crassus was an exponent of the moneyed party. In the next year Caesar was Consul. To further cement the union, Pompey married Julia, Caesar's daughter. During his Consulship he brought up several reforms, especially a bill for the division of the lands among the people. Before laying down his Consulship he procured the passage of a bill by which he was invested for *five* years with proconsular power over the Gauls and Illyricum.

Propraetor of Spain.

First Triumvirate.

Julia, Caesar's daughter, married to Pompey.

Goes to Gaul.

Nine years were spent in the subjugation of the Gauls. In the first campaign, Caesar at Bibracte (now *Autun*) drove back the Helvetii who were moving westward, and attempted to subdue Gaul. In the same year he defeated at *Basle* Ariovistus, a German King, who at the instigation of the Arverni and Sequani had been invited to take their part against the Aedui.

Gallic campaigns

B. C. 57.

In the second campaign, Caesar defeated the Belgae at the river Sabis (now *Sambre*).

Caesar in the third campaign broke up a coalition of the tribes of the north-west of Gaul, which had united against him. During this year, he renewed the agreement with Pompey and Crassus, who covenanted that his command should be extended to five years further. *B. C. 56.*

In his fourth campaign, Caesar crossed the Rhine, but remained only eighteen days on the German side. Later on in the same year he crossed over to Britain. *B. C. 55.*

The next campaign was chiefly against Britain, which, however, he only partially subdued, being recalled by a sudden uprising in Gaul. *B. C. 54.*

He in the next campaign crushed the general revolt, under Vercingetorix, of the subject tribes in Gaul. With the fall of Alesia, the power of the Gauls was crushed for ever. *B. C. 53.*

In his eighth campaign, he was complete master of Gaul, having reduced the tribes one after another to subjection. *B. C. 52*

The last campaign is uneventful. He remained in Cisalpine Gaul, and returned to Transalpine Gaul for a short time in the summer to review his troops. *B. C. 51.*

Changes while Caesar was in Gaul.

During Caesar's absence in Gaul, Crassus was slain at the battle of Carrhae, B.C. 53. This really broke up the Triumvirate. Pompey began to view Caesar's career with distrust and alarm. He entered into a league with the aristocracy and the Senate. A demand was finally passed by the Senate that Caesar should disband his legions. This Caesar refused to do, unless Pompey followed the same course. Finally a decree "that the Consuls should provide that the State should receive no hurt," was passed. This order was equivalent to a declaration of war, and was regarded as such by Caesar.

Caesar crosses the Rubicon.

With one legion he crossed the Rubicon, the boundary between Gaul and Italy. Soon Italy came over to his side. Pompey and the party of the Senate fled to Greece. Caesar marched to Spain, defeated the party of Pompey at *Ilerda*, and took Massilia in Southern Gaul.

Pharsalia.

Caesar then prepared to follow Pompey. For some time both armies encamped on the Apsus in Illyricum. Finally the decisive battle was fought August 9th, B. C. 48, at *Pharsalia*. Though Caesar's forces were but one-half the number of those of Pompey, the superior generalship and the courage of despair won the day, and Pompey's troops were completely routed. Pompey fled to

Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered by an emissary of the king. Caesar followed and became involved in difficulties in settling the succession to the throne.

Thapsus. Soon after he crushed the Pompeian party at the battle of *Thapsus*, in Africa, 46 B. C., Caesar was now the master of the Roman world. He returned to Rome, celebrated his three triumphs, and published a general amnesty to his opponents. He reformed the calendar, and introduced many useful measures for the internal economy of the State.

Munda. In 45 B. C., the two sons of Pompey had collected a force in Spain. Thither Caesar marched, and at *Munda* totally defeated it. The Senate conferred on him nearly all the offices of State, and thus the whole authority was centered in one man.

Death of Caesar. A conspiracy, headed by Brutus and Cassius, was formed against him. They were actuated partly by mistaken patriotic motives, and partly by personal jealousy and hatred. Caesar fell March 15th, 44 B.C., pierced by the daggers of the assassins just as he had entered the Senate house.

Caesar's appearance. Caesar was tall, and of commanding aspect; his features well marked and prominent: his complexion fair; his eyes keen, black, and expressive. In latter life he was bald, which he somewhat concealed by wearing a sort of diadem. His robust frame was inured to hardship, and exhibited remarkable powers of endurance. With regard to dress he was very fastidious. His private life was singularly free from many of the vices of the age.

II.

THE WORKS OF CAESAR.

(1) *Extant:—*

(a) Commentarii de Bello Gallico, in *seven* books. This work contains an account of the conquest of Gaul, from B.C. 58 to .C. 52. In the first book we have the conquest of the Helvetii mentioned, and in the seventh book the death of Clodius is referred to as lately having taken place. As the death of Clodius happened B.C. 52, we may assume that the events recorded happened between these two dates. An eighth book was added by Aulus Hirtius to complete the events to 51 B.C.

(b) Commentarii de Bello Civili, in *three* books. This gives an account of the civil wars down to the time of the

Alexandrine war. The history of the Alexandrine, African, and Spanish campaigns were afterwards added. Hirtius probably wrote the account of the Alexandrine campaign; Oppius, that of the African; the account of the Spanish war was written probably by a centurion of Caesar's army, according to Niebuhr, who discovers a change in style and expression from that of the other two accounts.

(2) *Lost Works*:—

(a) Anticato. A reply to Cicero's panegyric on Cato Uticensis, who fell at Thapsus, B.C. 46.

(b) De Analogia, or as Cicero calls it, *De Ratione Latine loquendi.* Dedicated to Cicero, and written when Caesar was crossing the Alps.

(c) Libri Auspiciorum or *Auguralia.* Published B. C. 63, when Caesar was *Pontifex maximus.*

(d) De Astris. Published also B.C. 63.

(e) Apothegmata, or *Dicta Collectanea.* A collection of witticisms made at different times.

(f) Poemata; nearly all written in his youth. To these belong *Oedipus*, *Laudes Herculis*, and *Iter* (describing his journey from Spain, B.C. 46.

III.

THE CONQUEST OF GAUL.

Greek settlement.

In the year 600 B.C., the Greeks of Phocaea, in Asia Minor, emigrated and settled at Massilia (now *Marseilles*). On the conquest of Asia Minor by Cyrus the Great, many of their countrymen joined the Phocaeans; and soon the young Greek colony rose to power. The inhabitants of Massilia became the leaders in learning and commerce, and established colonies along the neighbouring coast of the Mediterranean. As the Greek colonies encroached on the wild barbarians, wars naturally arose. In 154 B.C., the Ligurians besieged Antipolis and Nicaea, two dependencies of Massilia, when the Massiliots called in the aid of the Romans, by whose aid the Ligurians were defeated, and part of the territory of the Ligurians given to the Massiliots. Another attack soon after (125 B.C.) was made by the Ligurians, who were reduced a second time. The army of C. Sextius Calvinus, after three campaigns, plundered their territory, and reduced the inhabitants to slavery. Near Massilia,

Romans.

Aquae Sextiae. he founded the town of *Aquae Sextiae* (now *Aix*), which obtained its name from the hot *springs* of the neighbourhood.

Feuds About this time, the Aedui and Allobroges were at war. The Arverni, the most powerful of the Gallic tribes, aided the Allobroges, while the Aedui concluded a treaty with the Romans. In 121 B.C., Cn. Domitius defeated the Allobroges at Vindalium, a little above *Avignon*; and in the same year the Gallic confederates were defeated by the united armies of Cn. Domitius and Q. Fabius Maximus, near the junction of the Isere and the Rhone. The country of the Allobroges was reduced to a Roman province, and received the name *Provincia*. Massilia however, still retained her independence. Within the next succeeding years, the Romans enlarged the boundaries of the original Provincia, which extended at first from the Alps to the Rhone, by reducing that portion of Gaul from the Rhone to the Pyrenees, thus keeping open the road to Spain.

Cimbri and Teutones. In 113 B.C. the whole of Italy was thrown into consternation by the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones. After wandering about the Northern Italy, they entered Gaul and attacked the Roman Province. In 109 B.C. they defeated the Consul, M. Junius Silanus. The Romans sustained another defeat two years later when they attempted to keep back the Tugurini, one of the Helvetic cantons who were attempting to enter Gaul. In this battle fell L. Piso, the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law. In 106 B.C., Q. Servilius Caepio sacked Toulouse, which had formed a league with the Cimbri and Teutones. This temporary gain was followed by a crushing defeat inflicted on the Romans near the banks of the Rhone by the Cimbri and Teutones.

Successive defeats of the Romans.

Cimbri and Teutones separate. The Cimbri separated from the Teutones and laid waste all the land between the Rhone and the Pyrenees. While the Teutones remained on the East of the Rhone, the Cimbri turned back from the Pyrenees, joined the Teutones, and then passed the Alps. Marius who had gained great glory in the Jugurthine war, was sent against the invaders. He hastened to Southern Gaul, and defeated the Teutones at Aquae Sextiae, 102 B.C. In the following year he met the Cimbri at Vercellae and crushed them in battle.

Defeat of Teutones and Cimbri.

During the civil war, Sertorius, a follower of Marius, stirred up the Aquitani to revolt. The revolt, however, was unimportant. During the Consulship of Cicero, Catiline attempted to carry out his nefarious conspiracy. He and his associates

Intrigues of Catiline.

attempted to gain over the deputies of the Allobroges, who were on some mission at Rome, to join the conspiracy. These deputies betrayed the proposals to the Consul. The Allobroges not being successful in their mission, and perhaps instigated by the representations of Catiline, took up arms and defeated Manlius Tentulus. In a second battle, however, they were defeated by Pomptinus.

The Aedui, proud of their alliance with Rome, began to lord it over the other tribes. The Sequani formed an alliance with the Arverni. These two tribes invited Ariovistus, a German, to assist them against the Aedui. Soon the Aedui were reduced to submission. Their chief, Divitiacus, went to Rome, and implored the aid of the Senate. The Sequani meanwhile found out that Ariovistus from being an ally turned to be their master. He demanded a third part of the territory of the Sequani, and being refused, defeated them in battle at Magetobriga. After this he ruled them with unbearable insolence.

Ariovistus invited.

In B.C. 60, a report reached Rome that the Helvetii, like the Cimbri and Teutones, were preparing for a great emigration.

Emigration of Helvetii

The plan was under the direction of Orgetorix, a wealthy Helvetian noble. Seeing the fertile plains of Gaul, they were dissatisfied with their own land. In the previous year a decree had been passed at Rome, that the Governor of Gaul for the time being should protect the allies of the Roman people. In the next year 59 B.C., Julius Caesar was Consul. During his Consulship, P. Vatinius proposed a law giving Caesar the government of Gaul and Illyricum for five years. Caesar's object was to complete the conquest of Gaul. He remained at Rome till after the exile of Cicero. Soon after this B.C. 58, he hastily set out for Gaul, on the report that the Helvetii were on the move westward.

Caesar Consul

Sets out to Gaul.

IV.

THE ROMAN ARMY.

In ancient times of Rome, the army was drawn in a solid mass *(phalanx)*, a method very common among the Macedonians, and perhaps derived from them. Camillus (circa, 390 B.C.) is said to have broken up the *phalanx* into smaller bodies, called *manipuli*, capable of acting independently and also in concert. The whole legion was arranged in three lines. In the first *(hastati)* were the youngest men, in the second *(principes)* were

men in the full vigor of life, and in the third (*triarii*) were the veterans. Each line contained *ten manipuli*, arranged in the following fashion :

Hastati : — — — — — — — — — —
Principes : — — — — — — — — — —
Triarii : — — — — — — — — — —

Each *manipulus* of the two first lines contained two *centuriae*, each commanded by a *centurio*. The centurian commanding the right century of the manipuli was styled *centurio prior*, the one commanding the left century, *centurio posterior*. Light armed troops (*velites*) were attached, twenty, to each century Thus we have :

Hastati :	10 manipuli,	120 men	=20 centuries,	60 men	=	1,200
Principes :	10 "	120 "	=20 "	60 "	=	1,200
Triarii :	10 "	60 "	=20 "	30 "	=	600
	30		60			3,000
			To every century, 20 velites		=	1,200
						4,200

This was the *triplex acies* referred to so often by Caesar. To each legion were attached 10 *turma*, or squadrons of cavalry of 30 men each, each *turma* being sub-divided into *three decuriae* of 10 men each ; each *decuria* was headed by an officer called *decurio*.

To Caesar or Marius is ascribed the custom of drawing up the legion of cohorts. Each legion, when complete, had regularly 6,000 men, divided into 10 cohorts (*cohortes*), each cohort divided into three maniples (*manipuli*), and each maniple into two centuries (*centuriae*). The spear (*hasta*) was given to the *triarii*, who also seem to have been armed with the pike (*pilum*). Hence the two first lines were sometimes called *ante-pilani*.

Officers. The officers of the army were :

Centurions. (a) *Centurions* (*Centuriones*) : These were the leaders of the centuries, two in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. There was a regular system of promotion in the Roman army. The highest centurion was the first centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, so the lowest would be the second centurion of the third

maniple of the tenth cohort. As a badge of authority the centurions carried a staff.

(b) *Military Tribunes (Tribuni Militum):* These were six to each legion: hence ten centurions were under each tribune. Tribunes.

(c) *Lieutenants (Legati):* These were next the general in command. The cavalry were under the command of the *praefecti equitum* and *decuriones*. Legati.

The *weapons* of a Roman soldier were of two kinds:

(1) *Offensive weapons.* The ordinary soldier *(miles legionarius)* was armed with (a) *the javelin.* Of this there were four kinds: *pilum, jaculum, hasta, lancea.* The *pilum* was a strong heavy pike, consisting of a square shaft of wood four feet long, to the end of which was a strong sharp iron point about two feet long attached. The *jaculum* was a lighter dart used for hurling, while the *hasta* was a long spear used for stabbing. The *lancea* was a light spear with a broad point. The infantry used the *pilum*, while the cavalry and light armed troops, the *jaculum*, *hasta*, and *lancea*. Some of the latter carried bows *(arcus)*, and arrows *(sagittae)*, slings *(fundae)*. Arms.

(b) *The sword (gladius)* was short, broad, double-edged and pointed, more used for stabbing than for slashing, It was kept in a light scabbard fastened to a belt *(balteus)*.

(2) *Defensive weapons.* The soldiers of the legion had: (a) *a brazen helmet (cassis)*, surmounted with a crest; (b) *a cuirass (lorica)*, made of leather, or of strips of metal fastened on the leather, or of metallic scales, or of brazen plates; (c) *greaves (ocreae)*, reaching as high as the knee: (d) *a shield*, either oblong, made of boards, covered with leather and surrounded with a broad metallic rim *(scutum)*, or made of bronze and of an oval shape *(clipeus)*. The light armed troops had a small buckler *(parma)*, and a helmet of leather *(galea)*. The soldier had beneath his armour his tunic *(tunica)*, a thick, woollen under-garment reaching nearly to the knees. His cloak *(sagum)* was of heavy, woollen stuff, fastened by a broach on the shoulder, and open in front. The cloak of the general was called *paludamentum*.

Standards. The standards of the Roman army were: (a) *Aquila*, or eagle, the standard of the legion. This was of gold, silver, or bronze, with expanded wings. It was generally borne by the first centurion (*primpilus*). To lose the eagle was a great disgrace. The standard of the maniples was called (b) *signum*, and was of various designs, sometimes a wolf, dog, horse, serpent, figure of victory, &c. (c) The *vexillum* was a square or oblong banner carried by the cavalry.

Musical instruments. The *musical instruments* of the army were: (a) *tuba*, trumpet, was straight and deep-toned. This was used for the signals of advance and retreat for infantry; (b) *cornu* and *buccina* were crooked, and had a shriller note, and generally used to indicate a change of watch; (c) *lituus*, was formed like an augur's staff, and used for cavalry.

V.

THE ARMY ON THE MARCH.

The army on the march may be divided into three divisions: (a) *agmen primum*, or van; (b) *exercitus*, *agmen legionum*, or main body; (c) *agmen novissimum*, or rear. The van was generally composed of light armed troops of infantry or cavalry. Their chief duty was to find out the force of the enemy, or to hold the enemy at bay until the main body should arrive. The main body with the baggage train (*impedimenta*), followed. The rear generally consisted of cavalry or light armed troops.

The average march (*iter justum*) was from six to seven hours, or from fifteen to twenty miles a day. On the forced march the soldiers often covered fifty miles a day.

On the march, the soldiers carried two Roman pecks of grain (*frumentum*), cooking utensils (*vasa*), his arms, blanket, and two rampart stakes (*valli*). The private baggage of the soldier was called *sarcina*.

VI.

THE ARMY IN CAMP.

When the army was on the march, men (*metatores*), were sent forward to select a suitable place for a camp. If possible, a high ground (*locus superior*) was sought.

The camp was usually square or oblong. An enbankment (*vallum*), formed from the ground thrown up from trench (*fossa*), surrounded the camp. The camp had four gates: (1) *porta praetoria*, near the praetorium, or general's tent, faced the

enemy; (2) *porta decumana* was opposite to this; (3) *porta principalis sinistra* on the left; and (4) *porta principalis dextra* on the right. Connecting these two latter gates was the *via principalis*, and parallel to the street was the *via quintana*. Connecting the *porta praetoria* and *porta decumana* was the *via praetoria*.

The pickets were generally called *excubitores*; *vigiliae* were night watches; *custodiae* were sentinels to guard some particular post.

The average pay was about 6¼ cents per day. Caesar doubled this. A centurion received 25 cents per day. Besides the regular pay Caesar often gave them the money that accrued from the sale of booty.

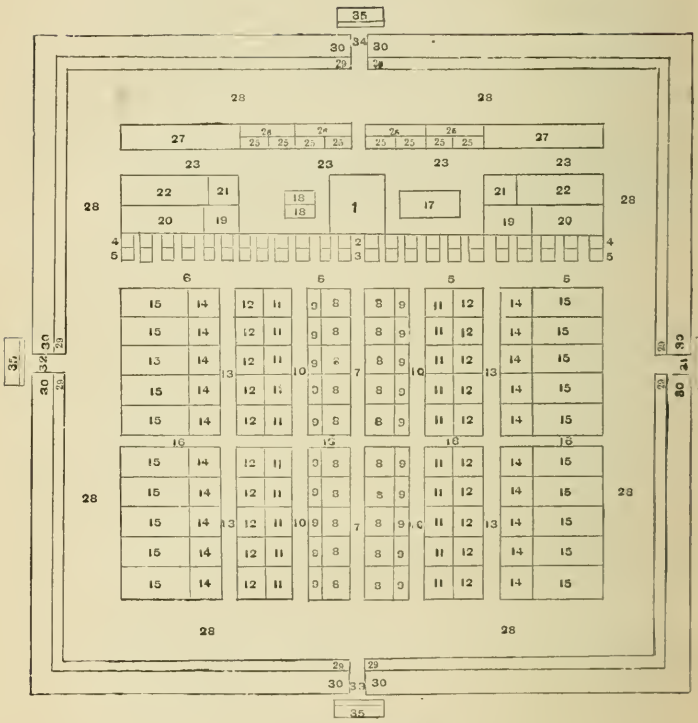
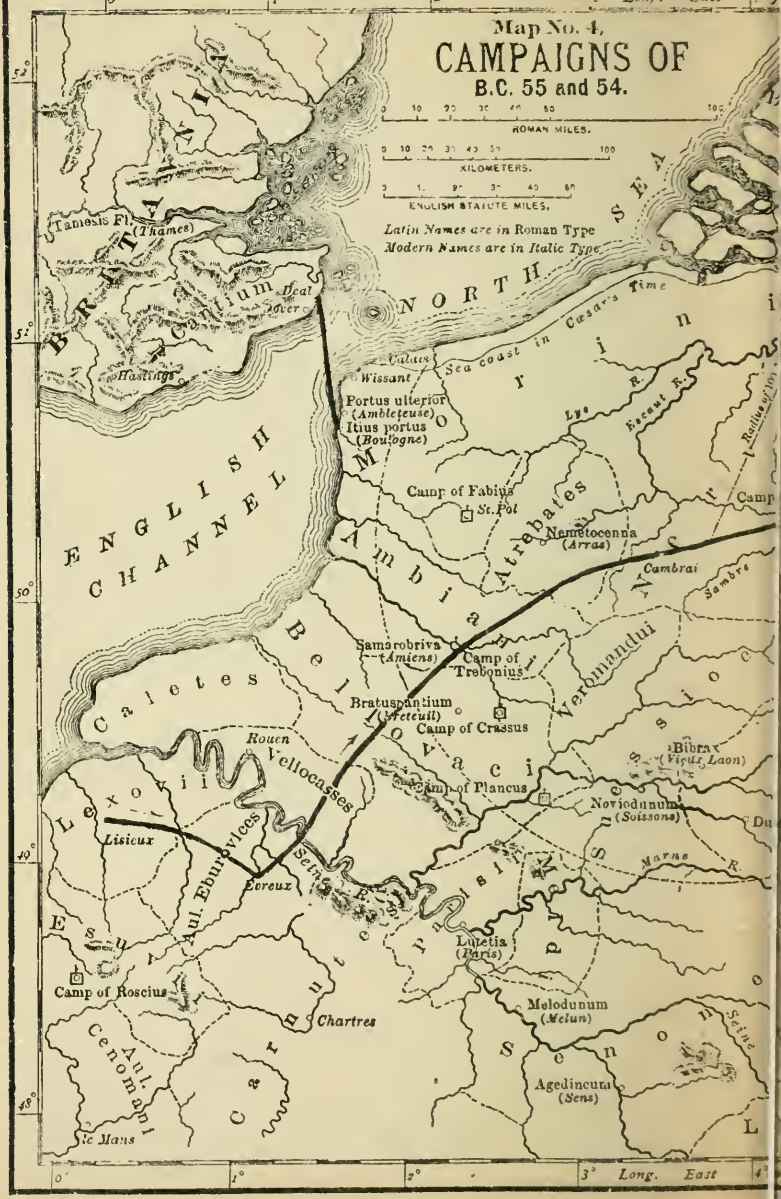
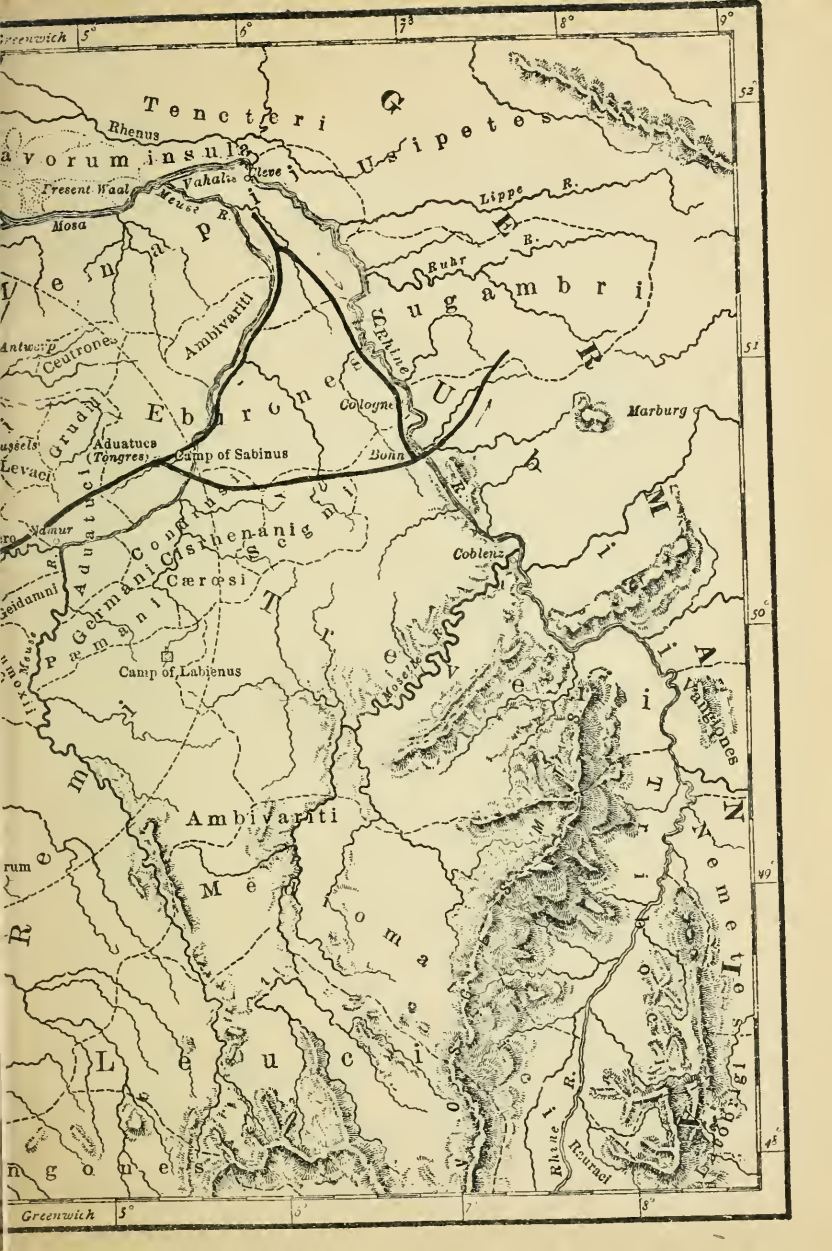


DIAGRAM OF CAMP.

EXPLANATION OF DIAGRAM.

1. *Praetorium*, or General's tent.
2. Ground for horses and baggage of the *Tribuni militum*.
3. Tents of the *Tribuni militum*.
4. Ground occupied by horses and baggage of *praefecti sociorum*.
5. Tents of *praefecti sociorum*.
6. Street, 100 feet wide, called *principia* or *via principalis*.
7. Cross street, 50 feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the Roman *equites* or horse
8. The *equites* of two Roman legions, in 10 *turmae* or troops each.
9. The *triarii* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each, forming on two different streets.
10. Two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *triarii* and *principes* of two legions.
11. The *principes* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
12. The *hastati* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
13. Two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *hastati* of the two Roman legions and the horse *(equites)* of the allies.
14. The horse of the allies.
15. The infantry of the allies.
16. The *quintana via*, a street 50 feet wide.
17. *Quaestorium*, the quaestor's tent.
18. The tents of *legati;* in front of them and the *quaestorium* was the *forum* where things were sold.
19. The veteran horse *(evocati equites)*.
20. The veteran foot *(evocati pedites)*.
21. The horse of the consular life guards *(ablecti equites)*.
22. The foot of the consular life guards *(ablecti pedites)*.
23. A cross street, 100 feet wide.
24. A street, 50 feet wide.
25. *Extraordinarii equites*, a part of the allied horse to serve in consul's body guard.
26. *Extraordinarii pedites*, a part of the allied foot to serve in consul's body guard.
27. Quarters for strangers coming into camp.
28. A span of 200 feet between tents and rampart.
29. Rampart *(vallum)*.
30. Ditch *(fossa)*, 9 feet deep, 12 feet wide.
31. *Porta principalis dextra*.
32. *Porta principalis sinistra*.
33. *Porta decumana*.
34. *Porta praetoria*.
35. A transverse breastwork protecting the gates.


Map No. 4.
CAMPAIGNS OF
B.C. 55 and 54.
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS.
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type
Modern Names are in Italic Type
Long. East
BRITANNIA
Oceanus
Thamesis Fl. (Thames)
Cantium
Ocel Dover
Hastings
ENGLISH CHANNEL
NORTH SEA
Sea coast in Cæsar's time
Calais
Wissant
Portus ulterior (Ambleteuse)
Itius portus (Boulogne)
Morini
Lys R.
Escaut R.
Camp of Fabius
St. Pol
Nemetocenna (Arras)
Atrebates
Ambiani
Cambrai
Sambre R.
Samarobriva (Amiens)
Camp of Trebonius
Caletes
Bellovaci
Bratuspantium (Breteuil)
Camp of Crassus
Rouen
Veliocasses
Camp of Plancus
Noviodunum (Soissons)
Bibrax (Vieux Laon)
Lexovii
Lisieux
Aul. Eburovices
Evreux
Seine R.
Marne R.
Parisii
Lutetia (Paris)
Camp of Roscius
Chartres
Melodunum (Melun)
Aul. Cenomani
Le Mans
Agedincum (Sens)
Senones
Loire R.


Greenwich
5°
6°
7°
8°
9°
52°
51°
50°
49°
48°
Tencteri
Rhenus
Vahalis R.
Trecent Waal
Meuse R.
Mosa
Lippe R.
Ruhr R.
Ubipeti
Ubii
Ambivariti
Ceutrones
Antwerp
Eburones
Cologne
Marburg
Aduatuci
(Tongres)
Camp of Sabinus
Bonn
Namur
Condrusi
Cæroesi
Coblenz
Camp of Labienus
Ambivariti
Treveri
Nemetes
Leuci
Rhine R.
Rastadt

C. JULII CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO
LIBER QUARTUS.

Usipetes and Tenchtheri migrate to Gaul, pressed by the Suevi. Customs of the Suevi.

I. Ea, quae sequuta est, hieme, qui fuit annus Cneio Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germani, et item Tenchtheri, magna cum multitudine hominum, flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quod, ab Suevis complures annos exagitati, bello premebantur et agricultura prohibebantur. Suevorum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula millia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserint, se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus invicem anno post in armis sunt ; illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultura, nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est ; neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causa licet. Neque multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in venationibus ; quae res et cibi genere, et quotidiana exercitatione, et libertate vitae (quod, a pueris nullo officio aut disciplina assuefacti, nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant), et vires alit, et immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit. Atque in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus, praeter pelles, habeant quicquam (quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta), et laventur in fluminibus.

II. Mercatoribus est ad eos aditus magis eo, ut, quae bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderent. Quin etiam jumentis, quibus maxime Gallia delectatur, quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germani importatis non utuntur : sed quae sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia,

haec quotidiana exercitatione, summi ut sint laboris, efficiunt Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio assuefaciunt; ad quos se celeriter, quum usus est, recipiunt: neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habetur, quam ephippiis uti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum, quamvis pauci, adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

The Suevi reduce the Ubii to a tributary state.

III. Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam latissime a suis finibus vacare agros: hac re significari, magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque una ex parte a Suevis circiter millia passuum sexcenta agri vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii (quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanorum), et paulo quam sunt ejusdem generis ceteri humaniores; propterea quod Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos quum Suevi, multis saepe bellis experti, propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt, ac multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

The Menapii are surprised by the sudden attack of the Germans.

IV. In eadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Tenchtheri, quos supra diximus, qui complures annos Suevorum vim sustinuerunt; ad extremum tamen, agris expulsi et multis Germaniae locis triennium vagati, ad Rhenum pervenerunt. Quas regiones Menapii incolebant, et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia vicosque habebant; sed tantae multitudinis aditu perterriti, ex his aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverant, et, cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis, Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi, omnia experti, quum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium, neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiorum possent, reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulaverunt; et, tridui viam progressi, rursus reverterunt; atque, omni hoc itinere una nocte equitatu confecto, inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt, qui, de

Germanorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interfectis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum quieta in suis sedibus erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt, atque, omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis, reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

The fickle character of the Gauls.

V. His de rebus Caesar certior factus, et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles, et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. Est autem hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et viatores, etiam invitos, consistere cogant, et, quod quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant; et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant, quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronuntiare cogant. His rumoribus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos e vestigio poenitere necesse est, quum incertis rumoribus serviant, et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

Caesar discovers intrigues between the Gauls and Germans; calls a meeting of the Gallic chiefs and gets their aid against the Germans.

VI. Qua consuetudine cognita, Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, maturius quam consuerat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo quum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit; missas legationes a nonnullis civtatibus ad Germanos invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent; omniaque quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Qua spe adducti Germani latius jam vagabantur, et in fines Eburonum et Condrusorum, qui sunt Trevirorum clientes, pervenerant. Principibus Galliae evocatis, Caesar ea quae cognoverat dissimulanda sibi existimavit, eorumque animis permulsis et confirmatis, equitatuque imperato, bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.

The German deputies negotiate with Caesar,

VII. Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat. A quibus quum paucorum dierum iter abesset, legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio: Germanos neque priores Populo Romano bellum inferre, neque tamen recusare, si lacessantur quin armis contendant, quod

Germanorum consuetudo haec sit a majoribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque deprecari: haec tamen dicere, venisse invitos, ejectos domo. Si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse eis utiles esse amicos: vel sibi agros attribuant, vel patiantur eos tenere, quos armis possederint. Sese unis Suevis concedere, quibus ne dii quidem immortales pares esse possint: reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.

who refuses to allow them to remain in Gaul.

VIII. Ad haec Caesar, quae visum est, respondit; sed exitus fuit orationis: Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent: neque verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare: neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine injuria possint. Sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum finibus considere, quorum sint legati apud se, et de Suevorum injuriis querantur, et a se auxilium petant: hoc se ab iis impetraturum.

They agree to give him an answer in three days; and ask him not to advance, but he refuses.

IX. Legati haec se ad suos relaturos dixerunt, et, re deliberata, post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros: interea ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit: cognoverat enim, magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causa ad Ambivaritos trans Mosam missam. Hos exspectari equites, atque ejus rei causa moram interponi arbitrabatur.

Geography of the Meuse and the Rhine.

X. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et, parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur Vahalis, insulam efficit Batavorum, neque longius ab eo millibus passuum octoginta in Oceanum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatricorum, Tribocorum, Trevirorum citatus fertur; et, ubi Oceano appropinquat, in plures diffluit partes, multis ingentibusque insulis effectis—quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur—multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

Caesar prepares for a battle against the Germans.

XI. Caesar quum ab hoste non amplius passuum duodecim millibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur: qui, in itinere congressi, magnopere, ne longius progrederetur, orabant. Quum id non impetrassent, petebant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret, eosque pugna prohiberet; sibique uti potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi: quorum si Principes ac senatus sibi jurejurando fidem fecissent, ea conditione, quae a Caesare ferretur, se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut, tridui mora interposita, equites eorum, qui abessent, reverterentur: tamen sese non longius millibus passuum quatuor aquationis causa processurum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit, qui nuntiarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent, et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

Treacherous attack of the Germans; death of Piso and his brother.

XII. At hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt—quorum erat quinque millium numerus, quum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant, atque is dies induciis erat ab eis petitus—impetu facto celeriter nostros peturbaverunt. Rursus resistentibus nostris, consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, suffossisque equis, compluribusque nostris dejectis, reliquos in fugam conjecerunt, atque ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus, amplissimo genere natus, cujus avus in civitate sua regnum obtinuerat, amicus ab Senatu nostro appellatus. Hic quum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit; ipse, equo vulnerato dejectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit. Quum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frater, qui jam proelio excesserat, procul animum advertisset, incitato equo se hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

The deputies of the enemy apologize for the attack; they are detained. Caesar orders a general advance.

XIII. Hoc facto proelio, Caesar neque jam sibi legatos audiendos neque conditiones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab his, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent: exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae augerentur, equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse judicabat; et, cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum jam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consequuti, sentiebat: quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum existimabat. His constitutis rebus, et consilio cum legatis et quaestore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportunissima res accidit, quod postridie ejus diei mane, eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani, frequentes, omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venerunt; simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa, quod contra atque esset dictum, et ipsi petissent, proelium pridie commisissent; simul ut, si quid possent, de induciis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos gavisus, illico retineri jussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi jussit.

and surprises the Germans who after a brief resistance,

XIV. Acie triplici instituta, et celeriter octo millium itinere confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam quid ageretur Germani sentire possent. Qui, omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri, et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato, perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem educere, an castra defendere an fuga salutem petere, praestaret. Quorum timor quum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri, pristini diei perfidia incitati, in castra irruperunt. Quorum qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt, atque inter carros impedimentaque proelium commiserunt: at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque—nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant—passim fugere coepit; ad quos consectandos Caesar equitatum misit.

are utterly routed by the Romans.

XV. Germani, post tergum clamore audito, quum suos interfici viderent, armis abjectis signisque militaribus relictis, se ex castris ejecerunt: et, quum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliquâ fugâ desperatâ, magno numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt, atque ibi

timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi perierunt Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes, perpaucis vulneratis, ex tanti belli timore, quum hostium numerus capitum quadringentorum et triginta millium fuisset, se in castra receperunt. Caesar his, quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit; illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

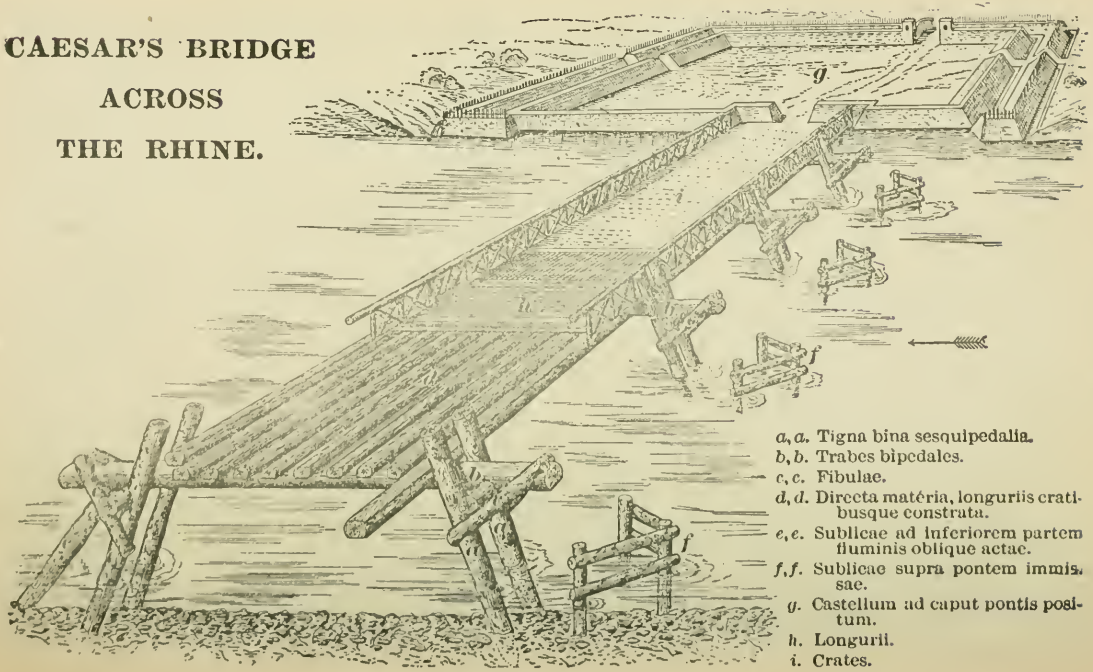
Caesar determines to cross the Rhine, and gives his reasons for so doing.

XVI. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum: quarum illa fuit justissima, quod, quum videret Germanos tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, quum intelligerent, et posse et audere Populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tenchtherorum, quam supra commemoravi praedandi frumentandique causa Mosam transisse neque proelio interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sigambrorum receperat seque cum iis conjunxerat. Ad quos quum Caesar nuntios misisset, qui postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent, responderunt: Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire: si, se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suevis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus reipublicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum: tantum esse nomen atque opinionem ejus exercitus, Ariovisto pulso et hoc novissimo proelio facto, etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia Populi Romani tuti esse possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

He constructs a bridge; description of it.

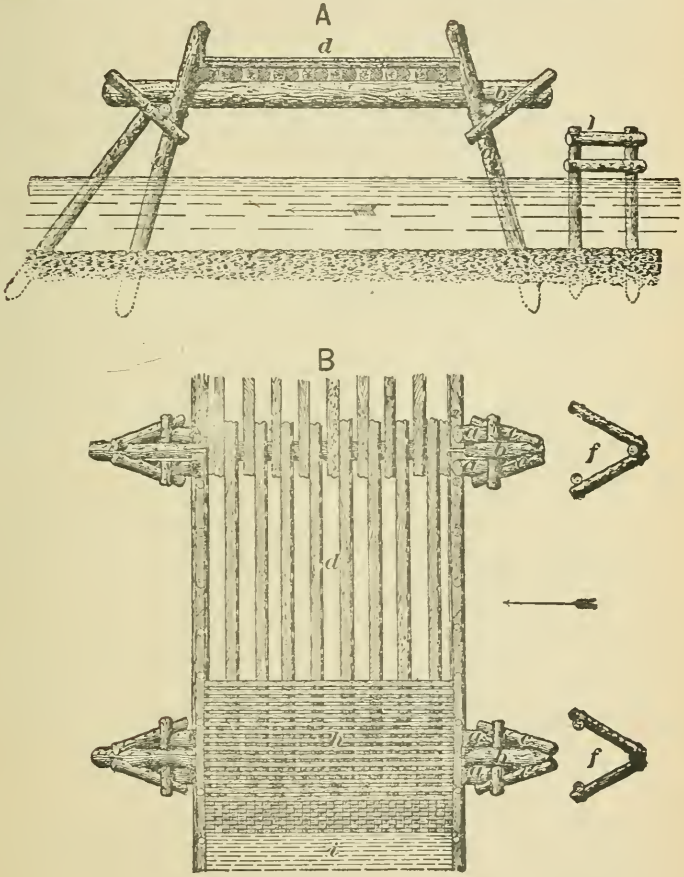
XVII. Caesar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire, neque satis tutum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque Populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur, propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum, aut

CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.



a, a. Tigna bina sesquipedalia.
b, b. Trabes bipedales.
c, c. Fibulae.
d, d. Directa matéria, longuriis cratibusque constrata.
e, e. Sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique actae.
f, f. Sublicae supra pontem immissae.
g. Castellum ad caput pontis positum.
h. Longurii.
i. Crates.

CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.



A. Cross-section.
B. The Bridge seen from above.

aliter non transducendum exercitum, existimabat. Rationem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo praeacuta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo pedum duorum inter se jungebat. Haec quum machinationibus immissa in flumen defixerat fistucisque adegerat, non sublicae modo directa ad perpendiculum, sed prona ac fastigata, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumberent ; iis item contraria bina, ad eundem modum juncta, intervallo pedum quadragenum, ab inferiore parte, contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. Haec utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum eorum tignorum junctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extrema parte distinebantur ; quibus disclusis atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitudo, atque ea rerum natura, ut, quo major vis aquae se incitavisset, hoc artius illigata tenerentur. Haec directa materie injecta contexebantur, et longuriis cratibusque consternebantur : ac nihilo secius sublicae et ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique agebantur, quae, pro pariete subjectae et cum omni opere conjunctae, vim fluminis exciperent : et aliae, item supra pontem mediocri spatio, ut, si arborum trunci sive naves dejiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti nocerent.

In ten days the bridge is finished and Caesar crosses ;

XVIII. Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus transducitur. Caesar, ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto, in fines Sigambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit, obsidesque ad se adduci jubet. At Sigambri, ex eo tempore, quo pons institui coeptus est, fuga comparata, hortantibus iis quos ex Tenchtheris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant, suaque omnia exportaverant, seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

after laying waste the lands of the Germans, he returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge.

XIX. Caesar, paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis, se in fines Ubiorum recepit ; atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suevis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit : Suevos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio habito, nuntios in

0° Longitude East 1° from Greenwich 2°
Bury-St. Edmunds
Cambridge
Bedford
Centimagni
Sudbury
Ipswich
Aldburgh
Orford
Harwich
Colchester
NORTH SEA
Trinobantes
St. Albans
Hertford
Chelmsford
Maldon
Crouch R.
Roding
Lea R.
Thames
London
Thames R.
Windsor
Sunbury
Kingston
Bromley
Croydon
Keston
Rochester
Maidstone
Canterbury
Littlebourn
Sandwich
Goodwin Sands
Deal
Walmer Castle
Dover
South Foreland
Dorking
Guildford
Westerham
Medway R.
Wye
Ashford
Folkstone
Hythe
Romney
Rother R.
Dunkirk
Time
51°
50°

Map No. 5.
BRITAIN
IN
CAMPAIGNS OF
B. C. 55 & 54.
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type. Modern Names are in Italic Type.
1 ST. CAMPAIGN
2 ND. CAMPAIGN
ENGLISH CHANNEL
Portus Iccrior
(Ambleteuse)
Portus Itius
(Boulogne)
Morini
Canch R.
Aurite R.
Nervii
Samarobriva
(Amiens)
Dieppe
Bethune R.
Newschatel
Caleti
Bellovaci
Bratuspantium
(Breteuil)
Arundel
Brighton
Longitude East from Greenwich

omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores, suaque omnia in silvas deponerent, atque omnes qui arma ferre possent unum in locum convenirent; hunc esse delectum medium fere regionum earum quas Suevi obtinerent: hic Romanorum adventum exspectare atque ibi decertare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus his rebus confectis, quarum rerum causa transducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum injiceret, ut Sigambros ulcisceretur, (ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

Caesar determines to invade Britain; his reasons for crossing.

XX. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua, Caesar, etsi in his locis—quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit—maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod, omnibus fere Gallicis bellis, hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intelligebat: et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset: quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque, evocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent, aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

Sends Volusenus who returns and reports to him.

XXI. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus Caium Volusenum, cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, uti, exploratis omnibus rebus, ad se quamprimum revertatur: ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam transjectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum fecerat, classem jubet convenire. Interim, consilio ejus cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus ejus insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio

Populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatusque ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit, et cum his una Commium—quem ipse, Atrebatibus superatis, regem ibi constituerat, cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidelem arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni habebatur—mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit adeat civitates, horteturque ut Populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus, perspectis regionibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur; quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

Caesar levies hostages from the Morini,

XXII. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari, et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti, bellum Populo Romano fecissent, seque ea quae imperasset facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi satis opportune Caesar accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat, neque belli gerendi, propter anni tempus, facultatem habebat, neque has tantularum rerum occupationes sibi Britanniae anteponendas judicabat, magnum his obsidum numerum imperat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quicquid praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori, legatis, praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant octodecim onerariae naves quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur quominus in eundum portum pervenire possent. Has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottae, legatis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, deducendum dedit. Publium Sulpitium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere jussit.

and reaches Britain.

XXIII. His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertia fere vigilia solvit, equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi, et naves conscendere, et se sequi jussit: a quibus quum id paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse

hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci haec erat natura: adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adjici posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in anchoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Voluseno cognosset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit, monuitque—ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent—ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis anchoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

The natives attack the Romans.

XXIV. At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisso, equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsequuti, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves, propter magnitudinem, nisi in alto, constitui non poterant; militibus autem, ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum, et in fluctibus consistendum, et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; quum illi aut ex arido, aut paululum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expediti, notissimis locis, audacter tela conjicerent, et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque hujus omnino generis pugnae imperiti, non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consueverant, utebantur.

Caesar's device; bravery of the standard bearer of the 10th legion; Roman advance.

XXV. Quod ubi Caesar animum advertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatior, et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus, et remis incitari, et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis, hostes propelli ac summoveri jussit: quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam, et navium figurâ, et remorum motu, et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti, barbari constiterunt, ac

paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret, "Desilite," inquit, "commilitones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero." Hoc quum magna voce dixisset, ex navi se projecit, atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri, cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt: hos item ex proximis navibus quum conspexissent, subsequuti hostibus appropinquarunt.

Rout of the enemy.

XXVI. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter; nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare, neque firmiter insistere, neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magno opere perturbabantur. Hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur: plures paucos circumsistebant: alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conjiciebant. Quod quum animum advertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri jussit, et, quos laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consequutis, in hostes impetnm fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

Several states submit to Caesar.

XXVII. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt: obsides daturos, quaeque imperasset sese facturos, polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, quum ad eos oratoris modo imperatoris mandata perferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conjecerant: tum, proelio facto, remiserunt et in petenda pace ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, quum uitro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa

intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit, obsidesque imperavit: quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem, ex longinquioribus locis arcessitam, paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros jusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

Fate of the eighteen cavalry troop ships.

XXVIII. His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves octodecim, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae quum appropinquarent Britanniae, et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant perfectae, referrentur; aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo dejicerentur: quae tamen, anchoris jactis, quum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae, continentem petierunt.

A storm and high tides wreck Caesar's transports.

XXIX. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies martimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit: nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus complebat; et onerarias quae ad anchoras erant deligatae, tempestas afflictabat; neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi, aut auxiliandi, dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquae quum essent —funibus, anchoris, reliquisque armamentis amissis— ad navigandum inutiles, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) totius exercitus perturbatio facta est: neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent; et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas eas usui sunt, et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

Conspiracy of British chiefs.

XXX. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea, quae jusserat Caesar, facienda convenerant, inter se colloquuti, quum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intelligerent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam

angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facta, frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere, et rem in hiemem producere, quod, iis superatis aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque, rursus conjuratione facta, paulatim ex castris discedere, ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

Caesar suspects their intentions; forms plans accordingly.

XXXI. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat: nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferebat, et, quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur, et, quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continenti comportari jubebat. Itaque, quum id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

Sudden attack of the British.

XXXII. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, quum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari renuntiarunt, pulverem majorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, duas ex reliquis in stationem succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi jussit. Quum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi, atque aegre sustinere, et, conferta legione, ex omnibus partibus tela conjici, animum advertit. Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos, noctu in silvis delituerant: tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupatos, subito adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant: simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

The British mode of fighting.

XXXIII. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae; primo per omnes partes perequitant, et tela conjiciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum, et strepitu rotarum, ordines plerumque perturbant; et, quum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverint, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt, atque ita curru se collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum, in proeliis praestant; ac tantum usu quotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti, in declivi ac praecipiti loco, incitatos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari ac flectere, et per temonem percurrere, et in jugo insistere, et inde se in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

Caesar acts on the defensive; severe storms keep the Romans within their camp.

XXXIV. Quibus rebus, perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae, tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque ejus adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto, ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus, suo se loco continuit, et, brevi tempore intermisso, in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris, reliqui discesserunt. Sequutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent, et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes demiserunt, paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta, ad castra venerunt.

Defeat and pursuit of the enemy.

XXXV. Caesar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent; tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio, diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio sequuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt; deinde, omnibus longe lateque afflictis incensisque, se in castra receperunt.

Caesar makes peace; sets sail for Gaul.

XXXVI. Eodem die legati, ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace, venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit, eosque in continentem adduci jussit, quod, propinqua die aequinoctii, infirmis navibus, hiemi navigationem subjiciendam non existimabat. Ipse, idoneam tempestatem nactus, paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit, quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex his onerariae duae eosdem, quos reliquae portus capere non potuerunt, et paulo infra delatae sunt.

Sudden attack of the Morini.

XXXVII. Quibus ex navibus quum essent expositi milites cerciter trecenti, atque In castra contenderent Morini, quos Caesar, in Britanniam proficiscens, pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti, primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt, ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere jusserunt. Quum illi, orbe facto, sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata, Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt, atque amplius horis quatuor fortissime pugnaverunt, et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, complures ex iis occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abjectis armis terga verterunt, magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

Conquest of the Morini and Menapii.

XXXVIII. Caesar postero die Titum Labienum legatum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui quum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent—quo perfugio superiore anno fuerant usi—omnes fere in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt; reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis, ex literis Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a Senatu decreta est.

NOTES.

BOOK IV.

CHAPTER I.

ea—consulibus : "in the following winter belonging to the year in which Cneius Pompey and Marcus Crassus were consuls." The Latin is loosely expressed. We should expect *hieme ejus anni qui fuit annus.* The Romans marked their years by the names of the *consuls* as the Athenians did by the name of the *chief archons.* Each book of Caesar is supposed to record the events of one year: B. I., the events of the Helvetian war of 58 B.C.; B. II., of the Belgic war of 57 B.C.; B. III., of the Venetic of 56 B.C.: B. IV., of the war against the Germans and of the first expedition to Britain, 55 B.C.—*Cn. Pompeio M. Crasso consulibus* : abl. absol.—Note the absence of the connective.

Usipetes Germani et Tenchteri : we often find the generic with the specific name : cp. *Aedui Ambarri* : B. I., c. XI. According to Tacitus there were three great div sions of the Germans : the *Ingaevones,* on the coast of the German ocean : the *Hermiones,* in the central and eastern parts of Germany : the *Istaevones* on the southern parts of the Rhine. The two tribes mentioned hare occupied the north bank of the *Lippe,* about fifty miles below Cologne.

a mari : "from (that part of) the ocean."—*quo = in quod.*

quod : "the fact that," explainin *causa* : in this sense *quod* takes the indicative.

Suevis : others have *Suebis,* a name still preserved in "Suabians," In its narrowest sense the word denotes the *Semnones* who dwelt between the Elbe and the Oder: but in its widest sense it was equivalent to *Hermiones,* and included all the tribes in eastern and central Germany, from the upper Rhine to the Vistula and Baltic.

premebantur : "had been hard pressed" : note the force of the imperfect.

Suevorum gens : according to Mommsen, the correct orthography is *Suebi,* and the word is etymologically connected with *sweifen,* "the rangers," or "" nomads" : a likely derivation considering the description given here and also in Tacitus (Germ. 38).

pagos : properly country districts of enclosed or cultivated land round a fortified place. Such is the meaning of *pagus* applied to Italy. Outside of Italy the word had a wider meaning. With the root PAG : cp. *πήγνυμι* "to fix" : cp. *pango* : so, *δῆμος,* "a township" : (from *δέω,* "to bind") : English *town* : A. S. *tun* from *tynan,* "to enclose." The word still exists in the French *pays* : cp. *Pays de Vaud.*

ex quibus—educunt : "from *each* of which yearly they lead out from their territories a thousand armed men." Note the force of the distribu-

tive: F. 69, 8, (a); P. 216, c. This would make the force of the Suevi 100,000 men.—*quotannis*; written thus or *quot annis*: abl. of point of time. In full it would be *tot annis quot sunt*: cp. *quot mensibus*, "monthly."

qui domi manserunt: "who (each year) have remained at home": explain the case of *domi*: F. 86, (first line) P. 161, (1). Others read *manserint*: in that case *qui=quippe qui*, giving a reason and hence the subjunctive: "inasmuch as they have remained at home": F. 198, 4; P. 99, (g), iii.

rursus: often used to express contrast or correspondence between two classes (*re, versus*) as in v. 44; VII. 47; 51.

in vicem: "in turn": literally, "for a turn": *in* often signifies distribution: cp. *in capita*, "a head"; *in modium*, "a peck."

anno post: abl. of measure, "by a year later"=*anno postero*.

ratio atque usus: literally, "the system and further the practice" or "systematic practice": *ratio*: "the principle," "the science" of a thing: *usus*, "the practice": these words are often combined.

privati ac separati: the *ager privatus* is "land belonging to the individual" opposed to the *ager publicus* or "land belonging to the state" as a whole: *ager separatus* is "land marked out by boundaries."

longius anno: probably (1) to prevent the ground getting exhausted by a longer occupation and (2) to prevent the people becoming too much attached to the soil.

frumento—vivunt: *vivo*, like *vescor*, takes the ablative.—*maximam partem*: "mainly": acc. closer definition or specification: F. 98, 3; P. 83, (e).

multumque—venationibus: "and they are greatly addicted to hunting expeditions": cp. B. VI. 21.

quae res: "and this fact."

genere—exercitatione—libertate: causal ablatives.

a pueris: "from boyhood": cp. Gk. ἐκ παίδων.

nullo—adsuefacti: "as they are trained by no service or schooling": abl. of instrument: F. 71, 3; P. 159, 124.

quod—faciant: "because, as they say they do": what would *faciunt* mean? F. 198, 2; P. 177.

immani—magnitudine: abl. of description: F. 131, 9; P. 85, (c). *eam=talem*.

locis frigidissimis: *in* is omitted, "in the coldest climate": cp. *loca temperatiora*; B. v. 12. Caesar was thinking of the mild winters in Italy.

vestitus: partitive genitive after *quidquam*.

leventur=se levent: H. 465; reflexive use of the passive voice.

CHAPTER II.

mercatoribus—habeant: the construction is: *mercatoribus est aditus ad eos* (i.e., *Germanos*) *magis eo* (*consilio*) *ut habeant* (*eos*) *quibus vendant* (*ea*) *quae bella ceperint*: "merchants are allowed to go into their country more with the design that they (the Germans) may have persons to whom they may sell the booty which they take in war."—*eo*: abl. of instrument explained by the clause *ut—habeant*.—*ceperint*: subjunctive because *quae* denotes an indefinite class = *talia ut*, "such things as," and expresses a consequence. Note the perfect tense as the action expressed in *ceperint* must precede that expressed in *vendant*; a purpose is expressed and hence the subjunctive.

desiderent: "require": F. 183, 5; P. 99, (a) **1.**

quin etiam: "nay even": "moreover." Properly *quin = qui ne?* "how not?", introducing something startling.

jumentis: perhaps only horses are meant, though the word may be applied to any animal "yoked": for *jugmentum*, *jugum*, "a yoke."

impenso pretio: "at an extravagant price": ablative of value: F. 150, 1; P. 160, (c).

prava atque deformia: "ill-shaped and unsightly."

summi—laboris: "that they are capable of enduring the greatest fatigue": F. 124, 1; P. 156, 118.

eodem vestigio: "in the same spot": the abl. with *in* omitted as in *equestribus proeliis.*

quum usus est: "when it is necessary." The indicative with *quum* is used when the contemporaneous time is expressed in principal and subordinate clauses.

eorum moribus: "according to their customs"! causal ablative: F. 71, 3; P. 159, 124.

inertius: "more indolent": or "more unskilful" (*in, ars*).

ephippiis: cp. ἐφίππια: "trappings of a horse."

quamvis pauci (*sint*): "however few they may be": distinguish in use *quamvis* and *quamquam.*

omnino: "at all": cp. II. 15, where a similar remark is made of the Nervii.

CHAPTER III.

publice—agros: "they consider it their special glory as a nation that the lands on their borders should lie unoccupied to the widest extent."—*publice*, "as a nation" opposed to *privatim*, "as an individual."—*quam*: note the emphasis that *quam* gives to superlatives.—*a suis finibus*: "starting from the territories," *i.e.*, "on the side of their territories."

hac—posse: "by this (they suppose) is shown the fact that a great

number of states cannot withstand their power": the subject of *significari* is the clause *magnum—posse.*

una ex parte a Suevis: literally, "on one side in the direction of the Suevi," *i.e.*, "on one side of the Suevian land."—*agri*: partitive genitive: F. 69, 10; P. 155, 113.

succedunt: "come close up."

Ubii: in Caesar's time the Ubii were east of the Rhine. In the reign of Augustus the Ubii removed to the west of the Rhine, and had as their chief town *Colonia Agrippinensis* (now Cologne).

ut—Germanorum: "according to German ideas": literally, "as is the comprehension of the Germans." *Captus* means "capacity," "nature," and the passage here means "a state wealthy and flourishing, for a German state."

humaniores: "more civilized": so speaking of the inhabitants of Kent, Caesar says, (v. 14) *longe sunt humanissimi.*

ventitant: how are frequentative verbs formed?

moribus: instrumental abl.: see note chapter I. Caesar, B. VI. cc. 11-24, compares the customs of the Gauls and the Germans.

experti: concessive: "though they had tried often by frequent wars."

gravitatem: "importance."

multo: abl. of measure, used adverbially. The difference between *multum* and *multo* as abverbs is this, that the former is used with verbs and the latter with comparative adjs. and adverbs. Translate: "reduced them to a state of far less importance and strength."

CHAPTER IV.

in eadem causa: "in the same condition."

supra: in chapter I., B. IV.

complures annos: acc. of continuance of time: F. 69, 9; P. 149, 92.

ad extremum: "at last," "finally."

quas regiones: referring to the general idea contained in *ad Rhenum.* The country where they had settled was that opposite to Cleves and Nymegen.

dispositis praesidiis: "garrisons having been placed at different parts." Note the force of *dis-* in *dispositis.*

transire prohibebant: Caesar uses with *prohibeo*: (1) an infinitive as here, and not *ne, quin, quominus* with subjunctive: (2) sometimes an ablative alone, (3) or an ablative with *a* or *ab.*

omni experti: "after trying every expedient."

custodias: "sentries."

reverti se: note that the forms of *revertor* from the present are passive

in form and from the perf., are active. The position of *se* after *reverti* instead of before it is to bring it close to *in suas*. Distinguish in meaning *redeo* and *revertor*.—*tridui viam progressi* : "advancing a three day's march."—*tridui=trium dierum* : F. 130, 7, 8 ; P. 81, (e) : *viam* : F. 95, 1 ; P. 83, (d).

omni—confecto : "all the distance being covered in one night by the cavalry."—*equitatu* : either the abl. of instrument or abl. of accompaniment with *cum* omitted.

priusquam—certior fieret : note that *priusquam* and *antequam* take the subjunctive when the idea of purpose is involved as here : F. 201, 5 ; P. 99, (f), IV.

eorum : *i.e.*, of the Menapii on the west side of the Rhine.—*partem* : acc. of time.

eorum copiis : "with their resources" : ablative of intrument or means by which they live.

CHAPTER V.

infirmitatem "the unstable character :" see notes on chapters VIII. and X., B. III.

nihil his committendum : scil. *esse* : "that no confidence ought to be placed in them."—*nihil*=emphatic *non* : see note B. III. chapter XIII.

est—consuetudinis : "now this is a characteristic of the custom of the Gauls :" F. 124, 1 ; P. 81, (a), 1.

invitos : "against their will."

cogant—quaerant—circumstat-cogant : explanatory of *hoc* : F. 187, 1 ; P. 99, (b).

audierit—cognoverit : subjunctive of dependent question : F. 176, 2 ; P. 99, (d).

mercatores : explain this accusative : F. 96, 2 ; P. II. 95. Decline *vulgus*. What nouns of the second declension are irregular in gender ?

rebus : "facts" opposed to *auditionibus* : "hearsays."

de summis rebus : "on most important matters."

quorum—est : "of which they are often of necessity compelled to repent immediately after :" —*quorum* : F. 165, 1 ; P. II. 68. Literally : "of which that they repent is necessary". —*in vestigio* : see note chapter II. ; B. III.

et—respondeant : "and in most cases the answers are invented to suit their wish." —*plerique*, scil, *viatores* : "most of the travellers." Distinguish in meaning between *plerique* : "most," the "majority," and *plurimi*, "very many but not necessarily the majority.

CHAPTER VI.

qua—cognita : note the introduction of the chapter by a relative showing a connection with the preceeding narrative : "now as he knew this custom."

ne—occurreret : "to avoid engaging in too serious a war." Caesar was afraid that he might have to fight the Galli and Germani together. The tense in *occurreret* shows that *proficiscitur* is a historical present : F. 216, 2, (a); P. 107, iii.

ad exercitum : Caesar probably joined his army in Normandy near Lisieux : B. III. chapter XXIX.

consuerat : see note on chapter I. B. III.

facta : scil, *esse*, so below with *missas, invitatos, dissimulanda.*

uti—discederent : adverbial clause : F. 183, 3 ; P. 99, (a), 2. —*uti=ut.* That is, to go from the Rhine into the interior of Gaul to help the inhabitants to throw off the yoke of the Romans.

posulassent=postulavissent : dependent clause in *oblique* narrative and hence the subjunctive : F. 206, 4 ; P. 99, (e).

fore parata : the past part. pass. and *fore* has the force of a future perfect : "will have been got ready."

qua spe adducti : "and so led on by their hopes."—*qua=itaqua ea.* Note that *spes* is always singular in Caesar.

Eburónum—Condrusorum : the Germans had crossed the Lower Rhine and were now in the valley of the Meuse by way of Maestricht. [See Map].

clientes : "dependants" : from root CLU, "to hear," hence "to obey."

quae cognoverat : the subjunctive might have been used if *quae* were an interrogative. It is, however, a relative and the expression is only adjectival to *ea* and so without any influence on the construction —The meeting of the chieftains probably took place at Amieus.

imperato : "levied."

CHAPTER VII.

comparata : "having been procured" : so also *parata* in the same sense.

quibus in locis : Caesar often repeats the antecedent noun in the relative clause : cp. B. I., c. VI.: *erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent.*

paucorum dierum iter : for *dierum* : F. 130, 7, 8 ; P. 81, (e).—*iter* : F. 69, 9 ; P. 149, 92.

haec : "as follows" ; referring to what comes after : see note B. III. Chapter VII.

neque priores inferre : "were neither the first to make war on." Note the difference between *priores* and *primos*, the first implying two people, the latter more than two.

inferre, recusare, lacessantur : note the present tense for the sake of vividness in *oratio obliqua*

quin—contendant : explain fully the use of ***quin*** : F. 185, 2, note ; P. II. 154.

quicumque: the antecedent is *eis*, understood after *resistere*.

deprecari: properly "to beg off" war.

haec tamen dicere, scil. *legati confirmaverunt Germanos*, "the ambassadors declared the Germans said these things."

domo: explain fully this case: F. 85, 2; P. 99, (h), i.—Decline *domus*.

attribuant—partiantur: what mood would this be in direct narration? F. 209, (5); P. 214, (a), 1.

non: the position shows it limits *superare*: "whom they fail to conquer."

CHAPTER VIII.

ad: "in reply to." —*visum est* impersonally: scil. *respondere*: "it seems good to reply." Note that *videtur* and *videbatur* are never so used by Caesar.

sibi—posse: "it was not possible for any friendship to exist between him and them."—*sibi*: F. 120, 3; P. 82, (g).

verum: "a fair thing": here=*par*: cp. Hor. Epist. 1, 7, 98: *metiri se quemque suo modulo ac pede verum est.*

qui—potuerint: why subjunctive: 198, 4; P. 99, (g), iii.—*alienos occupare* is the subject of *esse* and *non verum* the predicate. The order in Latin and in English is often inverted. Distinguish in meaning: *alius, alter, alienus.*

praesertim: often introduces a fresh reason: cp. *καὶ ταῦτα* in Greek. Translate "which can be given rightly and that too, to so large a horde."

licere: scil. *eis.*

in Ubiorum finibus: on the Rhine opposite to Cologne.

apud se: distinguish the meaning of this from that of *secum.*

hoc—imperaturum: scil, *dixit*: "he said that he would command the Ubii to do this." Caesar could do so as he had held in his power hostages of the Ubii. Note that *impero* takes a dat. of the person in the sense of "command," but a dat. of person and acc. of thing in the sense of "demand" or "levy."

CHAPTER IX.

re deliberata=quum res deliberata esset: "after the matter had been duly considered." What is the derivation of *delibero?*

post diem tertium: the next day but one, as the Romans in cases such as this reckoned in the day with which a given period began and ended instead of taking the first only as we do

propius se: "nearer them" What constructions may *proprius* have?

ne—quidem: here "not either," *i.e.*: no more than their demands mentioned in chapter VII.: cp. *οὐδέ.*

aliquot diebus ante: the ablative is regarded as the ablative of difference with *ante* and *post*.

Ambivaritos: these were Belgians on the west of the Meuse, and since the defeat of the Belgae, under the Roman sway.

interponi: "was introduced": *interponere* often means to throw an obstacle in the way: cp. *hoc decreto interposito*: "this decree having put an end to the discussion": B. VII. 33. With *fidem* it is twice used "to pledge one's word": B. V. chapters VI., XXXVI.

CHAPTER X.

Vosego: the modern Vosges near the northeast frontier of France. The Meuse really rises in the plateau of Langres, the cradle of the French rivers. Vosegus is the Latinized form of the Gallic word *fasach*, "a mountain waste," like the German *Wald*.

parte: "tributary." Caesar means here that the *Meuse* (Mosa) after receiving the *Waal* (Vahalis) flows into the Rhine below, eighty miles from the ocean and forms the island of the Batavians This implies that the Meuse does not directly flow into the German Ocean. At present, however, it does. If Caesar's account be correct the plain inference is that the geography of the country must have changed. We know that Caesar, however, was often mistaken on points of geography because these were often received on second hand and untrustworthy information.

Batavorum: the word *Batavi* still exists in the form *Betuwe*, a name applied to one of the islands in the Rhine, and meaning "good meadow." Their capital was *Lugdunum* (now Leyden), and not to be confounded with *Lugdunum* in Gaul (now Lyons).

Rhenus: this word is derived from root SRU: "to rush" or "flow": so *Rhodanus*: *Roma* (=*sroumā*, "the stream town,"): *ῥέω*, *ῥεῦμα*.—*ex Leopontiis*: "from out of the country of the Leopontii," *i.e.* "in the country of the Leopontii." This name is still preserved in the modern Val Leventina on the upper course of the *Ticino* (Ticinus).

longo spatio: "after a long distance": abl. abs.

citatus fertur: "flows swiftly":

sunt qui: literally, "there are those who": "some." Here=*aliqui*.

piscibus—ovis—vivere: see note Chapter I., B. IV.

capitibus: here *caput* means the "mouth" of a river. Other writers use it in the sense of the "source": cp. Hor. Od. B. I. i. 23: *ad aquae lene caput sacrae*.

CHAPTER XI.

passuum duodecem millibus: abl. after the comparative with *quam* omitted. The ablative is not, however, governed by the comparative, but is the ablative of extent since *amplius* has no influence on the con-

struction: cp. *amplius octingentos* next chapter: so we find it with the nom. B. VII. Chap. XV.: *amplius viginti urbes incenduntur*: or with genitive, B. I. chap. XXXVIII.: *quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum.*

ut erat constitutum: "that the envoys should return the next day but one.

congressi, scil. *cum eo*: "meeting with him."

antecessissent: "to head the line of march": F. 188, 5 (a); P 99, (c). Explain fully the order of the line of march of a Roman army.

praemitteret scil. *quosdam*: the object is omitted as in English.

sibique—mittendi: "and that he would give them an opportunity of sending ambassadors among the Ubii": observe the construction of *potestam facere* with dat. of person and gen. of *gerund.—sibi, i.e., Germanis*, not simply *legatis.*

senatus: "council". Caesar here speaks of the deliberative assembly of his enemies as if they were Romans.

sibique—fecisset: "pledged their word of honour to them on oath." Note the pluperfect tense as representing the prior of two actions.—*jurejurando*: literally, "with," or "by an oath."

ea conditione—se usuros, scil. *esse*: "that they would accept the terms of agreement." What verbs govern the ablative? F. 116; P. II. 65.

daret: subjunctive of oblique command: *da*, in direct narrative.

eodem illo pertinere: "tended to that same end," "pointed in the same direction."

ut—reverterentur: explains *eodem illo.*

abessent: subjunctive by attraction to the mood of *reverterentur.*

convenirent: subjunctive of command in *oratio obliqua*: *convenite*, of *oratio recta.*

qui nuntiarent=(eos) ut ei: "men to bear the order": F. 188, 5, (a); P. 99, (c). Here *nuntiarent=mandatum perferrent.* Note that *mittit* is a historic present as shown by the tense in *nuntiarent.*

sustinerent; "hold their ground": not often is *sustinere* used without an object.

quad—accessisset: the mood is doubly necessary: (1) from the clause being a dependent one in *oratio obliqua*; (2) because the final notion of expectation is involved: F. 206, 4; P. 99, (a).

CHAPTER XII.

at: often introduces a change of subject.

ubi—conspexerunt: "as soon as they caught sight of our cavalry": with *ubi primum*: cp. *quum primum.—ubi* meaning "when" takes the perfect indicative except in B. II. c. 9, *ubi faciunt*; B. IV. 26, *ubi conspexerant.*

cum—haberent : "though they themselves had not more than eight hundred": for subjunctive : F. 198, 4 ; P. 99, (b), v.—*octingentos* ; see note on *passuum duodecim milibus* : B. IV. chapter XI.

nihil—nostris : "while our men had no apprehension".—*nihil* may be taken as the object of *timentibus* or as an emphatic *non* : as in B. III. 13.

induciis : dative of purpose : F. 134, 1 ; P. II., 101.

rursus resistentibus : scil. *nostris.*

consuetudine sua : "according to their custom": abl. of manner, often *ex* is expressed : B. IV. chapter XXXII.

subfossis—dejectis : these ablative absolutes are not co-ordinate in time : "the horses being stabbed from beneath and, in consequence, many of our men being thrown from their horses."—*dejectis,* scil. *de equis.*

ut non—venissent : "that they did not cease from flight until they came into sight of our army."—*fuga* : F. 158, 2 ; P. 85, (h).—*venissent* : for the subjunctive : F. 201, 5 ; P. 106.

interficiuntur : historical present F. 216, 2 (a) ; cp. B. V. chapter XV

Piso quitanus : the Aquitanian obtained probably his Roman name when the rights of a Roman citizen were conferred upon him : cp. B. I. 47.

genere : abl. of origin : F. 156, 4 ; P. 85, (l) : so also after *editus genitus, ortus, oriundus, satus.*

amicus, a distinction given for extraordinary services as in the case of Sequanian Catamantaloedes (B. I. 3); of Ariovistus (B. I. 35).

equo vulnerato : abl. absolute expressing both time and cause.

cecĭdisset : distinguish this in meaning from *cecīdisset.*

id : "this mishap."

CHAPTER XIII.

hoc—proelio : express this in other ways.

jam : joined to a negative as here : "no longer."—*sibi* : F. 173, 4 ; P. 82, (d).

ab iis qui : "from such men as": hence the subjunctive of result in *intulissent* : F. 188, 5, (a) ; P. 99, (b). For what other reason may this be subjunctive? F. 206, 4 ; P. 106.

per dolum atque insidias ; "by the employment of craft and treachery": join these words with *intulissent.* These expressions are nearly equivalent to adverbs : cp. *per summum dedecus* : "most disgracefully". *de improviso,* "suddenly": *de integro,* "afresh."

petita pace : see note on *equo vulnerato* : B. IV., chap. XII.

exspectare : object of *judicabat* and the subject of *esse.*

dum—reverteretur : "until the forces of the enemy should be increased and their cavalry return": for the subjunctive : F. 201, 4 ; P. 69, (f), iii. Distinguish in meaning *redeo* and *revertor* ; *cresco* and *augeo*.

summae dementiae esse : "was the height of madness": F. 124 ; P. 81, e, ii ; predicate genitive after *esse*.

cognita infirmitate : ablative absolute expressing a cause ; "owing to," or "from his knowledge of the fickleness."

quantum—auctoritatis : "what prestige": for partitive genitive : F. 69, 10 ; P. 81, (b).

nihil spatii=nihil temporis : F. 69, 10 ; P. 81, (b).

ne—praetermitteret : explanatory of *consilio* : "not to let pass any battle day" *i.e.*, a favorable chance for bringing on a battle.—*pugnae* may be either (1) a genitive, like *tempus committendi proelii*, or (2) a dative of purpose.

postridie ejus diei : literally, "on the day after that day."

perfidia : what is the force of *per* in *perfidus, perjuro ?* It was likely that Caesar charges the Germans with a breach of faith to justify his own indefensible conduct.

majoribus natu : give the positive and superlative of this expression.

simul—simul=et—et : "both..and."

sui : F. 171, 6 ; P. II. 134.

contra—dictum : "contrary to what had been arranged." The subjunctive is owing to the virtual *oratio obliqua*. We might have expected *contra id quod esset dictum*. It is rare that *contra* is used with *atque* though we often find *aliter ac* : B. II. c. XIX.

si quid possent : "whatever they could" : F. 95, 1 ; P. 83, (d), i.

ut—impetrarent : "that they might gain their object as to the truce by playing false." What words are used only in the plural ?

quos : F. 232, note ; P. 239.—*oblatos*, scil. *esse*. —*gavisus* : what verbs are semi-deponent ?—*illos* : pleonastic as expressed in *quos*.

CHAPTER XIV.

acie —instituta : express in other ways.

millium, scil. *passum*, an omission probably for the case of euphony, and only in case of gen. pl. : B. I. 41 ; II. 17 ; V. 13.

prius—quam—possent : F. 201, 5 ; P. 99, (f), IV.

quid—ageretur : dependent question : F. 176, 2 ; P. 99, (d).

omnibus—rebus : "by the whole state of affairs."

discessu suorum, scil. *principum* : "by the withdrawal of their chiefs."

perturbantur = dubitant, or in *perturbantur* we have a pregnant construction for *perturbantur dubitatione*, "are distracted with doubt." Note the historical present as shown by *praesturet*.

—ne—an—an: in triple disjunctive questions Caesar also uses *utrum,—ne, an*: *utrum, an, an*: and—*ne, an*, with the first conjunctive omitted.

pristini diei: a descriptive genitive: P. 130, 7, 8; P. 81, (e).

quo loco—quo in loco, i.e., *in castris*: the preposition *in* is often omitted with *locus*: cp. *alieno loco* (B. I. c. 15), *iniquo loco* (B. II. 33), *indoneo loco* (B. III. 17).

puerorum mulierumque: "consisting of children and women." Caesar's action in thus cancelling the truce and butchering defenceless women and children was so severely censured at Rome that Cato declared that Caesar ought to be delivered up to the Tencteri: (Plut. Caesar 22).

CHAPTER XV.

post tergum: "behind them": cp. *a tergo*: "from behind, "in the rear."

Mosae et Rheni: Schneider supposes the place here to be below the *Batavorum insula*, and eighty miles from the sea (chapter x.) Kroner says that the spot was at the junction of the Maas nnd Waal: Herzog, Thiel, where the Waal turns to the Maas. Another reading for *Mosae* is *Mosulae*. At the confluence of the Rhine and Mosel was the Roman colony of *Confluentes* (now Coblenz).

reliqua fuga desperata: "despairing of further flight": for construction of *despero*; see note on *desperata salute*: B. III. chapter III.

ad unum: "to a man,"

ex tanti belli timore: "after the dread of so great a war": or "freed from the dread of so great a war": join these words closely to *se receperunt*. Others take the preposition *ex* as here a substitute for the concessive abl. absolute: (see note on *ex loco superiore*, B. III., chop. IV.), and translate: "great though the apprehension of so important a war had been."

millium: genitive of description: P. 130, 7, 8; P. 81, (e).

iis—fecit: it is a very strong proof that Caesar did not believe the senate guilty of the charges against them when he spared them. He put to death the senators of the Veneti (B. III. chapter 16) whom he did think guilty, though he admitted that they acted on compulsion.

apud eum: "in his camp": literally "near him."

libertatem, scil. *remanendi apud eum*: "leave to remain in his camp."

CHAPTER XVI.

Germanico: equivalent to an objective genitive: "against the Germans."

justissima : "the best grounded."—*quod* : explains *illa* : "namely that."

suis—voluit : "he wished that they should have fears for the safety of their own possessions as well" : for the dative *rebus* : F. 5, 4 ; P. 82.

accessit—quod : "there was also the fact that" : see note on chapter II., B. III.

supra : see B. IV., chapter IX.

qui—postularent = ut ei postularent : F. 184, 1 ; P. 99, (a), 1.

intulissent : subjunctive after the virtual *oblique* narrative implied in *postularent*.

dederent : *ut* is omitted after verbs of demand or command : F. 181, 3 ; P. II. 27.

non aequum = iniquum : "an unfair thing" : *aequum* agrees with the clause *Germanos transire*.

sui imperii—potestatis : F. 69, 10 . P. 81, (e), ii.

postularet : what would this be in direct discourse? F. 209 (5) . 106, (a).

quod—preme,entur : the subjunctive of *oblique* narrative introduced by *orabant*.

si—prohiberetur : "if he were hindered from doing this by being engrossed by state business."

occupatio : does not mean business itself, as in English "occupation," but the engrossing power of business.—*transportaret* : see note *dederent* above.

id—futurum : "this would be sufficient for (present) aid and grounds of hope for the future."—*ad* : 'as regards,' 'for.'—*reliqui temporis* : descriptive genitive.

pulso—facto : "by the defeat of Ariovistus, and the occurrence of that very recent battle." Note the Latin idiom. The English noun is contained in the Latin participle. For the connection between Ariovistus and the Suevi, see B. I. 58 ; V. 29, 55 ; VI. 12.

opinione—tuti : "rendered safe by the prestige and friendship" : abl. of means or instrument.

CHAPTER XVII.

navibus : instrumental ablative.

satis tutum : when in an anemy's country Caesar was always very careful to keep the district behind him well secured.

suae dignitatis esse : "to be conformable to his own dignity" : F. 124 ; P. 81. e. ii

etsi—proponebatur: "though the very great difficulty of making a bridge was presented to him," *i.e.*, was evident. For this force of *proponere*, see B. I. Chap. 17, 20; III. 18.

id sibi contendendum, scil. *esse*: "that he ought to strive to effect it." —*sibi*: F. 173, 4; P. 104 (a), i.

rationem—instituit: the plan of the bridge he adopted was as follows." It is generally supposed that Caesar crossed the Rhine near Bonn, where the river is from 14 to 16 feet in depth and 1500 to 1600 feet wide.

tigna—jungebat: "he joined together in pairs piles, at a distance of two feet from one another, each a foot and a half in thickness, sharpened a little at the bottom and proportioned in their length to the depth of the river."—*bina*: what are the uses of distributives?—*sesquipedalia*: give the derivation of this word.—*ab imo praeacuta*: literally, "sharpened from the lower end."—*jungebat*: "he joined in successive pairs": hence the imperfect.

haec—statuebat: "when he had sunk these in the river, and had fastened them by means of rafts, and had driven them home by rammers, not like a pile perfectly upright, but leaning forward and slanting, so that they should incline according to the direction of the current, in like manner opposite to these, at the distance of forty feet, at a point lower down, he placed other pairs, joined in the same manner and slanted against the force and current of the river."—*defixerat*: the pluperfect denotes repeated action—*sublicae modo*: because a pile is perpendicular, but these beams slanted a little.—*fastigata*: sloping like the gable ends (*fastigium*) of a house.—*quadragenum = quadragenorum*. Note the force of the distributive, forty feet in each case, with each pair of beams (*tigna*): F. 69, 8; P. 58, (c).

haec—distinebantur: "each pair of these piles besides was kept asunder, after beams had been let in between them two feet thick—the distance between the posts (of each pair of piles)—by two braces, one on each side at their extremity."—The *trabes* passed between the *tigna* and had one *fibula* above and one below. The *fibulae* kept firmly the *trabes* in their places; see plan.

quibus—tenerentur: "now that these (piles) were kept apart and had been braced in opposite directions, such was the solidity of the structure and such the nature of the materials that the greater the force of the current that drove against it, so much the more firmly were the piles kept bound together.—*quibus disclusis*: F. 100, 5; P. 85, (c).—*quo major—hoc arctius*: F. 128, 4; P. 85 (a), 63.—*incitavisset*: F. 187, 1; P. 99, (b).

haec—consternebantur: "these (cross-beams) were connected together by laying on timber straight, and were overlaid with poles and hurdles." —*haec*, i.e. the *trabes bipedales*. The timber (*materia*) or girders were laid at right angles to the current in the direction of the bridge.—*longuriis*: joists, laid on the girders (*materia*) in the direction of the current. *cratibus*: section of wicker work, probably branches of trees, laid over the joists to take the place of planks: see plan.

ac—excipiarent: "and no less carefully piles were also driven in obliquely at the lower point of the stream, so that they being placed by way of a buttress and joined with every part of the structure might stem the force of the river.—*nihil secius*: literally "different by nothing." These posts driven so as to slant up the stream braced the piers by breaking the force of the torrent.—*exciperent*: F. 187, 1; P. 99, (b).

spatio: abl. of degree of difference, as *supra pontem* has the force of a comparative.

dejiciendi operis causa: "for the purpose of destroying the work": F. 171, 6; P. 104.

his defensoribus=his defendentibus: abl. abs. expressing cause: F. 100, 5; P. 85, (o).

rerum, i.e., *trunci*, *naves*. *–neu=neve*: "and not."

CHAPTER XVIII.

decem diebus: abl. of time *within* which the action occurs.

quibus: "from the time that," "after": see note on *quibus*, chapter XXIII. B. III.

coepta eret comportari: note that the pass. form of *coepi* is and when a passive infinitive is added; the active form when an active infinitive follows: *he began to besiege the city: the city began to be besieged.*

praesidio relicto: F. 100, 5; P. 85, (o).

quibus....petentibus: to whose request for peace and friendship"= *quibus quum peterent.*

fuga—iis: these abl. absolutes are not co-ordinate, the latter depending on the former: "had made preparations for flight owing to the strong advice of these": as if he had said *fugam comparaverant quum ii hortarentur.—finibus excesserant*: *excedere* may take abl. or abl. with *ex* or the accusative.

CHAPTER XIX.

pauc·s dies: accusative of duration of time.

vicis; see note on *vico*, chapter I: B. I.

premerentur: subjunctive of virtual oblique narrative: F. 206, 4; P. 106, (a).

posteaquam—comperissent: subjunctive of *oblique* narrative: F. 206, 4; P. 106, (a).

nuntios demigrarent: scil. *hortantes*: "had sent messengers in all directions urging them to leave their towns": F. 181 3; P. 99, (2). It is not likely that the Suevi had walled towns: cp. B. VI. chap. 22.

hunc—obtinerent: "this was a chosen spot almost in the centre of these district which the Suevi occupied."—*medium*: predicate agreeings with *locum* understood=*in medio.*

decertare: "to fight a pitched battle": cp. *depugnare*; καταπολεμόω.

quod: "and this fact."

rebus: explained by the appositional clauses introduced by *ut*: F. 181, 1; P. 124, 27. The objects here mentioned were not accomplished, and altogether the results of this expedition were fruitless.

obsidione: the fact is that the Suevi had reduced the Ubii to the position of slaves. He probably means by the word that they were hemmed in on all sides: cp. B. VII, 32.

profectum, scil, *esse*: "that enough had been gained."

CHAPTER XX.

exigua—reliqua: "though but a small part of the summer remained": F. 100, 5; P. 85, (o).

etsi—hiemes: "though in this district the winters set in early, because all Gaul slopes to the north." Note that *etsi* in Caesar occurs with present imperfect or pluperfect indicative in Caesar, but never with the subjunctive. The word *Britannia* is derived from the Keltic *brit* or *brith*, "painted," from the custom of the inhabitants staining their bodies: B. v. 14. In the old Welsh poems the island is called *Prydom* and the people *Brython*. The name *Albion* was also given to it: (cp. Aristotle de Mundo 3), which may be derived from *alp*, "white" or "high."

septentriones: the seven atars in the constellation of the Great Bear. The word is from *septem*, "seven,"—*trio=strio*, "a star": cp. Sanscrit *târâ=staras*, "stars," literally, "strewers of light": cp. English *star;* German *stern*.

quod—intelligebat: cp. B. III., chapter IX., where he mentions the fact that the *Nannetes* and *Veneti* sent to Britain for aid in carrying on their wars against the Romans. Dion Cassius says that Caesar's motive was simply to be the first Roman who invaded the island. Suetonius attributes the expedition to avarice, mentioning the pearl fisheries as the inducement.

bellis Gallicis: "in the wars against the Gauls": probably an ablative of time or the ablative within a point of time, or *in* may be omitted.

inde=ex Britannia.

si—deficeret: "even though the time of the year would prevent him from carrying on a regular campaign": for the subjunctive of *oblique narrative* see F. 206, 4; P. 106.

magno usui: "of great advantage": F. 134, 1; P. 82, (c). The frequent allusion to the conquest of Britain in the subsequent literature of Rome shows how popular such an expedition was.

si—cognovisset: the clauses introduced by *si* are really the subject of *fore*. Note the *asyndeton* in *loca, portus, aditus.*

Gallis: there can be no doubt that Caesar is wrong here; cp. his statements in B. III., chapter 8: *naves habent Veneti plurimas quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt.*

neque=quisquam: "for not a single person goes there without a purpose." Note the emphatic position of *quisquam*. Zumpt says p. 280; "*temere* means, properly, *at random*, opposed to *consulto*, deliberately. Joined with *non*, *temere* acquires (but not in Cicero) a peculiar significance—*non facile*." This has the backing of the Greek paraphrast who translates this *οὐ ῥᾳδίως*. If this is so, translate, "for it is no easy matter for any one to go there."

Gallias: the divisions of Gaul are meant. In Caesar's time these were *Gallia Cisalpina* and *Gallia Transalpina*. Augustus (B.C. 27) divided Gaul into *Narbonensis, Aquitania Lugdunensis, Belgica.*

esset: dependent question: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

incolerent: scil. *eam.*

nationes: gens (Greek *φῦλον*) was a nation sprung from a common origin: *natio* (Greek *ἔθνος*) was a subdivision of the *gens.*

majorum navium: he refers to the transports (*naves onerariae*).

CHAPTER XXI.

priusquam—faceret: "before he made the attempt": when does *priusquam* take the indicative and when the subjunctive? F. 201, 5; P. 99, (f), IV. Note the original meaning of *periculum*: cp. Greek *πεῖρα*, *πειράομαι.*

Caius Volusenus: see note B. III. chapter V.

navi longa: see note B. III chapter IX.

mandat: distinguish in meaning, *mandare*, "to charge," in consequence of a thorough confidence of the person entrusted with a commission (cp. Greek *ἐφίεσθαι*): *jubere*, "to bid," merely in consequence of one's own wish or will, in opposition to *vetare* (cp. Greek *κελεύειν*): *imperare*, "to command," by virtue of military supreme authority (cp. Greek *ἄρχειν*).

Morinos: "into the country of the Morini." The *Morini* were "the dwellers on the sea": see note B. III. chapter IX. They occupied the district from the *Scaldis* (now Scheldt) on the east to the *Samara* (now Somme) on the west. Their chief town was *Gesoriacum*, afterwards *Bonnonia* (now Boulogne). The *brevissimus trajectus* is, of cousre, the Straits of Dover which is 21 miles in width between Dover and Calais.

Veneticum bellum: see B. III. This war was carried on B.C. 56.

ejus=Caesaris.—perlato: "having been reported."

qui polliceantur=ut ei polliceantur: F. 184, 1; P. 99, (a), 1.

dare: rarely do we find a present infinitive and an omission of pronoun with verbs of *promising*: F. 110, 1; P. 101, ii.

liberaliter pollicetur: "making kind promises to them."—*domum*: F. 85, 1; P. 83, (g).

Atrebatibus superatis: the *Atrebates* a people of *Gallia Belgica* occupied what was once called *Artois* (probably a corruption of the name), but now named *Pas-de-Calais*. Others say that Arras (Flemish Atrecht) is a corrupt form of the name. They were defeated by Caesar at the river *Sabis* (now Sambre). A portion of them, after their defeat, crossed over to Britain and settled in Berkshire on the Thames. It is quite probable that Caesar may have been influenced in sending Commius to Britain by the fact, that he being king of the Atrebates on the continent would also exercise an influence over his countrymen in Britain.

magni—habebatur: "was highly esteemed": *magni* is the genitive of value F. 150, 2; P. 81, (g).

huic = Commio.

possit, scil. *adire.—adeat*: F. 96, 2; P. II, 95. Often *ut* is omitted after *mando*: cp. B. III. chapter III.: *huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat.*

eo = in Britanniam.

ut—fidem sequantur: "to join the side of": literally, "seek the protection of."

seque: construe *imperatque huic ut nunciet se (Caesarem) celeriter venturum esse eo.*

perspectis regionibus: "after ascertaining the nature of the country": B. III. chapter VII.: *cognoscere regiones.*

quantum—potuit: "as far as his means allowed him." —*facultatis*: partitive genitive: literally, "as much of opportunity as."

qui = quippe qui: "inasmuch as he": F. 198, 4; P. 99, (g).

navi egredi: "to disembark": cp. ἐκ νῆος ἐκβαίνειν. Caesar uses both *nari egredi* or *ex navi egredi.*

perspexisset: dependent question: F. 176, 2; P. 99, (d).

CHAPTER XXII.

dum—moratur: note that *dum*, expressing time merely, meaning "while" always takes the *present* indicative except in B. VII. 82 even when the principal verb is evidently *past.*

qui—excusarent: "to offer the following excuse for their past conduct:" F. 184, 1; P. 99, (a), 1. This refers to the events narrated in the previous book; chap. 28.

nostrae consuetudinis: he refers to the mercy shown by the Romans to those who yielded to their power.

Populo Romano: dative of the object, "against the Roman people." There is implied a hostile relation in *bellum facere*: cp. μάχεσθαι τινι.

seque: construe *legatique venerunt, qui pollicerentur se facturos ea quae imperasset.*

hoc—accidisse: "this was a tolerably good streak of fortune." For another meaning of *accidit* see note B. III. chapter II.

quod—volebat: the indicative as giving Caesar's own reasons. *—post terquum* "behind him."

has—anteponendas: "this business consisting of such trifles:" for descriptive genitive: F. 130, 7, 8; P. 81, (e).

Britanniae=trajectui in Britannam: "to his expedition to Britain:" This condensed mode of expression *(brachylogy)* is common in Greek and Latin poetry: *κόμαι χαρίτεσσιν ὁμοῖαι*: "hair like (the hair of) the graces:" So Shakespeare Coriolanus, Act II: sc. 2. 21: *his ascent is not so easy as those who*, etc.

quibus adductis eos: *quibus* refering to the hostages: *eos*, to the Morini. *—in fidem*: "as a pledge" that the Morini would carry out their agreement.

coactis—contractisque: "having been collected and mustered."—*coactis* has the idea of collection under compulsion: *contractis* implies only their assembling.

quicquid—habebat: "all the ships of war he had besides." Note the use of *quicquid navium=omnes naves*: cp. Hor. Epist. 5. 1.: *at odeorum quicquid in coelo regit*: Livy, 3. 9.: *per quicquid deorum est.*

huc—accedebant: "here were to have joined them." The imperfect expresses sometimes an *unfulfilled* intention: F. 216. 3, note 1; P. 191, (b).

ab—octo: "at the distance of eight miles." We sometimes find *ab* with the ablative of distance, and generally it is so used when the place is not mentioned, but understood from what precedes. Zumpt (§ 396) inclines to the idea that in the mind of the speaker the place is mentally governed by the preposition. We also find the some idiom in Greek: *ἀπὸ σταδίων εἰκόσιν τῆς πόλεως.*

quo minus=ut eo minus: goes with *tenebantur*, a verb of hindrance: F. 185, 2; P. 99, I., 1.

Q. Titurio Sabino. Sabinus and Cotta were *legati* of Caesar, and seem to have been highly esteemed by their commander. They perished in an ambuscade planned by Ambiorix, king of the Eburones: B. V., 37. When these two are mentioned, the name of Sabinus comes first: B. IV., c. 38; B. V., c. 24; B. V., c. 52: B. VI., c. 32. In B. VI., c. 37, the name of Catta occurs first. Sabinus was probably the senior officer and higher in command, though both are styled *legati.*

Menapios: a people of *Gallia Belgica* who inhabited both sides of the Rhine. Their chief town was *Castellum Menapiorum* (now Kessel).

CHAPTER XXIII.

his constitutis rebus : express this in other ways.

tempestatem : "weather" : a general term either good or bad according to the context.

tertia vigilia : the night was divided by the Romans into *four* watches, each of which would average three hours. Caesar would set out about midnight. It was generally held that the date was the 26th August. As to the port from which Caesar sailed many conflicting opinions are held. Mr. Airy, the Astronomer Royal, contends that Caesar started from the *estuary of the Somme*, and landed at the beach of *Pevensey*, on the coast of Sussex, near the spot where William the Conqueror disembarked eleven centuries afterwards. Mommsen favours the idea that the infantry embarked at *Ambleteuse* (which he identifies with *portus Itius*), and the cavalry at *Wissant*, east of Cape *Griz-Nez*; (Hist. of Rome, IV., 7.) Strabo also gives *portus Itius* for the first expedition. Others say that the infantry started from Gesoriacum *(Boulogne)*, and the cavalry at *Ambleteuse*.

solvit, scil. *naves* : "he set sail" : for the omission of *naves* : cp. Cic. de Off. III., 12, 50 : de Murena, 25 : cp. the Greek expression *αἴρειν ναῦσι*, or *ναῦς*.

equites—progredi : so that they might embark in the eighteen ships that were windbound.

naves—conscendere : "to embark" : cp. *ἐπιβαίνειν ναῦσι*, or *εἰσβαίνειν εἰς νῆας*. With *conscendere* we have either *navem* or *in navem*. In the same way Tacitus uses *ascendere* : *Ann* II., 75.

cum—administratum esset : the subjunctive as *cum* gives a reason for his starting with the cavalry.—*id* : refers to the embarkation of the cavalry. They were detained by stress of weather since they did not start till the 30th of August.—*tardius* "too slowly" : F. 56, 55.

hora—quarta : as sunrise would be shortly after 5 a.m., he would reach Britain about 9 a.m. Dr. Halley thinks that Caesar landed at *Deal* ; D'Anville says at *portus Lemanis* (now *Lymne*), a short distance below Dover, while Mr. Airy gives *Pevensey* on the Sussex coast.

primis : "the vanguard."

expositas : here in the sense of *collocatas* or *instructas*. Elsewhere in Caesar *exponere* means (1) to disembark or (2) to point out, explain.

adeo—angustis : "so close to it."

in litus : "to the water's edge" : cp. Celsus (Dig. 50, 16, 96) : *litus est quosque maximus fluctus a mari pervenit.—litus*=Greek *ῥηγμῖν* : *ripa* =Greek *ὄχθη*, the bank of a river : *ora*=Greek *ἀκτή*, the bank of land on the water.

ad—egrediendum, scil. *ex navibus* : see note B. IV., chapter **21.**

nequiquam idoneum : "altogether unsuited" litotes.

dum—convenirent: F. 201, 4; P. 99, (f), iii.

in anchoris exspectavit: a pregnant construction for *naves ad anchoras deligavit et exspectavit*: "he cast anchor and waited."

legatis—convocatis: as the *imperator, legati, tribuni, militum* and *principilus* formed the council of war, Caesar may here refer to its being called.

cognosset—vellet: dependent question; F. 176, 2; P. 99, (d).

monuitque: followed by the clause *ut postularent* which is also followed by the clause (*ut*) *administrarentur*. The construction is loose and very doubtful Latin. With the reading the full construction is. *monuitque* (*ut*) *omnes res administrarentur ab iis ad nutum et ad tempus ut rei militaris ratio*, etc.: "he warned them that everything must be done with strict regard to the signal and the time, since military practice and especially maritime affairs required this, inasmuch as these latter had a rapid and ever-changing movement": for the omission of *ut*: F. 181, 3; P. 124, 27, f. R.—*ut quae*: F. 196, 4; P. 99, (g), iii.

sublatis—anchoris: "having weighed their anchors": cp. *αἴρεσθαι τὰς ἀγκύρας*.

constituit: "he moored": cp. *ἐπ' ἀγκύρας ὁρμεῖν*.

ab eo loco: from Dover, probably towards the northeast.

aperto ac pluno litore: between Walmer Castle and Deal.

CHAPTER XXIV.

at: generally denotes a change in the narrative.

essedariis: the word *essedum* or *esseda* is from the Keltic *ess*, "a chariot." It seems to have been used by the Gauls and the Germans, as well as by the Britons cp. Verg. Georg. III., 204; Cic. ad Fam. 7, 6; Phil., 2, 58. It appears to have resembled the *δίφρος* of Homer, but to have been heavier, and open in front as well as behind. The *aurigae* mentioned in chapter 33 seem to have been the masters, while the fighting was done by the *clientes* or retainers. The word *essedarii* includes both *aurigae* and *clientes*: cp. Tac. ag 12: *auriga honestior*: *clientes propugnant*. This was the reverse of the Homeric method, where the driver (*ἡνίοχος*) was regarded as a mere attendant (*θεράπων*), while the warrior (*ἥρως*) was the chief man.

quo—genere: this statement does not harmonize with that of Tacitus (Ag. 12): *in pedite robur*: *quaedam nationes et curru proeliantur.—consuerunt = consueverunt*: see note B. III., chapter I.

reliquis—subsecuti: "following close with the rest of the forces" cp. II. 19; II. 11, where *cum* is used. "It must be observed, as an exception, that the ancient writers, especially Caesar and Livy, in speaking of military movements, frequently omit the preposition *cum*, and use the ablative alone." Zumpt, 473.

ob has causas: "for the following reasons." Note that *hic* refers to *what follows* as well as to *what precedes*. With the former it is equivalent to the Greek *τοιόσδε, ὅδε*, and the latter to *οὗτος, τοιοῦτος*.

quod—poterant: giving Caesar's own reason. What would *possent* mean?

militibus autem—quum illi: the order of the clauses is inverted. The second should come first, since *autem* = δέ, and *cum* = μέν. For the case of *militibus*: F. 173, 4; P. 152, 105; of *locis*: F. 85, 3; P. 161, 125, (a).—*oppressis* of course agrees with *militibus*, "weighed down." Translate: "the soldiers, moreover, weighed down with a great and heavy burden of armour, were compelled at one and the same time to leap down from the ships." The arms of an ordinary soldier *(miles legionarius)* were (a) *defensive*, consisting of a shield *(scutum* or *clipeus)*; a helmet *(galea)*: a coat of mail *(lorica)*; greaves *(ocreae)*: and (b) *offensive*, a sword *(gladius)*; two javelins *(pila)*.

omnibus—expediti: "having none of their limbs burdened with armour."

pedestribus proeliis: "in battles by land": cp. *pedestres navalesque pugnae*: Cic. de Senec, 5: *pedestria itinera*: Caesar, B. III., 9.

CHAPTER XXV.

Quod—advertit: the usual construction with *animum advertere* in the classical period is, *animum advertere ad aliquam rem* or *alicui rei*. The construction with two accusatives, one being a pronoun, *id*, *hoc illud*, etc., is ante-classical, and though it occurs in Caesar and Sallust is really *archaic*. Cicero uses the form of *animadvertere* which Caesar also uses. —*quod* may be taken as (1) the accusative of specification or (2) as governed by the preposition in composition.

naves longas: see note chapter IX. B. III.

specie: (cp. εἶδος) "appearance" embracing size, colour, shape, etc.: *figura* signifies "outline." The Britons like the Veneti (B. III. chap. 14.) were unaccustomed to see large vessels propelled by oars.

motus expeditior: "the speed of which rendered them more suitable for service."—*ad usum* = *ad navigandum*.

ad latus apertum: "on their unprotected flanks." This expression means here "the right": so in B. II. chap. 23; B. VII. chap. 82. The *clipeus* or *scutum* protected the left.

fundis—tormentis: the slingers *(funditores)* and the archers *(sagittarii)* belonged to the class of the *velites*, or light armed infantry. The inhabitants of the Balearic islands supplied the former while the Cretans supplied the archers. By *tormenta* Caesar refers to the *catapulta*, *balista*, and *scorpiones* formed on the principle of the cross bow for hurling darts and stones against the enemy.

propelli ac submoveri: "to be driven off and dislodged:" an example of *hysteron proteron*.

magno usui: note B. IV. chap. 20.

paulum modo: "just a little," "only a short distance."

atque: at the beginning of a new sentence *atque* is rare and marks a strong contrast between what follows and what precedes: "and then."

cunctantibus: abl. absolute. Curtius distinguishes the roots in *cunctor*,

"to hesitate:" (connected with ὀκνεῖν); *cunctus* (=*covinctus* or *co-junctus*), "whole" "all": and *percontor*, "to enquire" (connected with *contus*, κόντος) "a punt pole."

qui aquilam ferebat=aquilifer: "the eagle bearer." A bronze or silver eagle *(aquia)* was adopted by Marius in his second consulship (104 B.C.) as the standard of the legion. The standard of the *cohortes* were called *signa*, and seem to have been different for the different cohorts of the same legion. A figure of victory, a round ball, a hand and other emblems were used. The standard of the cavalry was a kind of banner called *vexillum*. The honor of carrying the eagle belonged to the first centurion of the first maniple of the *triarii*. He was called *primi pili centurio* or *prinipilus*, and he had an oversight over the other centurions. Along with the *tribuni militum*, *praefecti*, *legati*, and *imperator* he formed the council of war. He held the rank of an *eques*. —*decimae ligionis*: the tenth was evidently Caesar's favourite legion: cp. B. I. chap. 40: *huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.* The legions were numbered *prima*, *secunda*, *tertia*, etc., according to the order of enlistment.

contestatus deos: the Romans entered upon every important undertaking with an appropriate *formula* of prayer to the deity or deities likely to aid them.

ea res: "his undertaking." —*commilitones*: "comrades."

nisi vultis: F. 210, 1; P. 99, (h). To lose the standard was always looked upon as most disgraceful, especially to the standard-bearer. since it was a violation of the military oath *(sacramentum)*, which bound the soldier "not to desert their standard through a desire to escape or through fear, nor leave their ranks": Livy, 22, 38. To animate the soldiers the standard was sometimes thrown among the enemy: Livy III., 70; II., 59; VI., 8.

officium praestitero: "shall perform my duty." The future perfect has here the form of a quickly completed future action.

magna: "loud." —*inter se*: "each other."

aquilam ferre: "to advance." Explain the phrases *signa inferre*: *signa referre*: *signa convertere*: *signa castris efferre*: *ad signa convenire.*

dedecus: "disgrace," *i.e.*, the loss of the eagle.

universi: "in a body," "to a man."

ex navibus: the ships nearest the enemy, composing the first line.

CHAATER XXVI.

pugnatum est: F. 164, 2, note 2; P. 72, (h). Note and account for the position of *acriter*.

nostri tamen answered by *hostes vero.* We should have expected *hostes vero* first followed by *nostri tamen*, but the order is often inverted as in chapter XXIV.

quod—poterant: as giving Caesar's own reason. What would *possent* mean?

alius—aggregabat: literally, "one from one ship, another from another, collected around whatever standard he chanced to meet." For the construction of *signis*: F. 120, 2.

singulares: "one by one": rarely used in the plural.

plures paucos: note the vividness of the asyndeton: construe *plures hostes circumsistebant paucos Romanos.*

alii: we should have expected *allii* before *conspexerant* to balance *alii* here.

adoriebantur—circumsistebant—conficiebant: note the force of the imperfects: F. 216, 3, note; P. 291, (b).

ab latere aperto: see note B. IV. chapter XXV. For the use of *ab*: cp. *ab hostibus*, "on the side of the enemy": *a fronte*; *ab oriente*; *a nobis stare.*

quod—animadvertisset: see note B. IV. chapter XXV.

scaphas—novium: "the cutters belonging to the men-of-war."—*scapha*: cp. Greek σκάφη, σκάφος from σκάπτω, "to hollow out."

speculatoria navigia: "the spy-boats," built specially for quick sailing.

laborantes: "in distress."

simul—constiterunt: "as soon as they set foot on dry land."—*simul* = *simul ac*, or *simul atque.*

suis: "their comrades."—*longius*: "to any great distance": see note B. IV. chapter 23.

capere: "to reach." They were at *Wissant* or, some say, at *Amble teuse*, unable to sail on account of a storm: cp. chap. 28.

ad pristinam: i.e., in this respect alone his success was incomplete.

CHAPTER XXVII.

de pace: "to treat for peace."

obsides daturos, scil. *se esse*: see B. IV. chapter XXI.

imperasset = *imperavisset*: subjunctive of *oratio obliqua*: F. 306, 4; P. 106.

quem—praemissum: the plupf. affects *praemissum*: "who, as I previously mentioned, had been sent forward."

quum—perferret: F. 198, 4; P. 99, g, ii.—*oratoris modo*: "as an ambassador": cp. *ritu*, *more*, *ratione.*

imprudentiam: "rashness," "thoughtlessness."—*ignosceretur*: F. 164, 1; P. 96, b, ii.

quod—intulissent: Caesar assumes here an air of injured innocence.

dum ultro petissent: "since they had presumed to ask."—*continentem*, scil. *terram*: cp. ἤπειρος, scil. γῆ.

partem—partem: "some—others."

paucis diebus: "within a few days": F. 82, 2; P. 85, (b), iii.

principes subject of *coeperunt.*

CHAPTER XXVIII.

his rebus: "by these measures": instrumental ablative.

post—ventum = quarto die postquam in Britanniam venerunt, note the double construction: *diem quartum* is governed by *post* as if *post* were a preposition, though it is really a part of the conjunction *postquam*: cp. *ante diem quartum Kalendas Januarias*. Since the Romans reckoned both days in an expression of time, this expression would be equivalent to our "three days after." Caesar set sail at midnight on the 26th of August, and landed on the coast of Kent about 10 a.m. August 27th, and the cavalry started on the 30th of the month. Dr. Halley calculates that the moon mentioned in the beginning of the next chapter was full on the night of the 30th. Note the varieties of expression for *post diem quartum quam*: *post quatuor dies quam*: *quatuor diebus postquam*: *quarto die postquam*: *quarto die quam* with *post* omitted.—*est ventum*: F. 164, 2; P. 96, (b).

supra: chapter XXV.

sustulerant: "had taken on board."

leni vento: "with a light breeze:" properly an ablative absolute: "the wind being mild." The *portus superior* where the cavalry had been weatherbound was Ambleteuse.

solverunt: "set sail:" here said of the ships themselves, although the word is generally used with reference to the crew.

ex castris videbantur: "and were visible from the camp." It is probable that Caesar's camp was pitched on an elevated spot, not far from the shore.

sed: construe *sed (tanta tempestas subito coorta est ut) aliae referrentur eodem.—eodem*: "to the same spot."

aliae—deferebantur: "(while) others were driven down."—*propius*: construed here with the accusative, as is usual in Caesar: B. IV. 9: V. 36. It may also be construed with a dative or acc. with *ad*.

magno—periculo: "with great peril to themselves:" *sui* is an objective genitive after *periculo*.

quae—petierunt: "while they, in spite of the fact that their anchors had been dropped, were nevertheless (*tamen*) filling with waves, putting out of necessity into the high seas in the teeth of night they made for the continent."—*quae* join this with *quum*.—*tamen* opposed to *anchoris jactis*.—*adversa nocte*: abl. abs.: F. 100, 5; P. 130, 48.

CHAPTER XXIX.

eadem nocte: the night of August 30th.

qui dies—consuevit: we might expect *quo die luna consuevit*. The construction is loose, and the sentence should be divided into two for an English translation. "It unfortunately happened on the same night that the moon was full. On the day when this happens the moon is wont to cause very high tides on the ocean." Another reading for *qui dies* is *quae nostrique*: scil. *militibus*. The influence of the moon on the tides seems to have been known to Cicero: cp. *de Divin.* 2. 14: *quid de fretis aut de marinis aestibus dicam? quum accessus et recessus (flow and ebb) lunae motu gubernantur.* This work of Cicero did not appear, however, till 44 B.C., eleven years

after the invasion of Britain. The rise and fall of the tide in the Mediterranean is hardly perceptible: hence the ignorance of the Romans respecting it. At Dover it rises to the height of 19 ft., at Boulogne to 25 ft.

uno tempore: "at one and the same time."

exercitum—curaverat: "had had the army brought across." The meaning of the gerundive with *curo* is peculiar. It does not mean *necessity*, but supplies the place of the present participle passive; that is, it has the meaning of a continued passsive state: cp. B. I., 12: *pontem faciendum curat*: B. V., 1.: *naves aedificandas curarent*. With the infinitive *curo* is generally limited to negatives.

quasque—complebat=et eas naves quas in aridum subduxerat aestus complebat. Note that *subducere naves* is "to haul up" on shore opposed to *deducere naves* "to launch."

onerarias—afflictabat: "and the storm kept dashing together the ships of burden which were riding at anchor." With *onerarias*, scil. *naves*. Note the force of the imperfect *afflictabat* as well as of the *frequentative*: F. 216, 2; P. 191, 199.

neque—dabatur: "nor was an opportunity afforded our men of managing (the vessels) or of lending aid."

compluribus—fractis: "after the wreck of several vessels." Express this in other ways.

quum—inutiles: "since the others were unseaworthy owing to the loss of their ropes, anchors and other tackling."—*funibus—amistis*: causal abl. abs. The *funes* (Gk. σχοῖνια) were strong ropes by which the anchors were held or the cables by which the ships were fastened to the shore. The ropes of the rigging were called *rudentes* (Gk. τορεῖα).—*armamentis*: see note B. III. chapter XIV.

magna: note the emphasis given to this word by its separation from the noun.

in quod—accidere: "as was unavoidable": literally, "a thing which could not *but* happen."—*quod accidere*: the acc. with the inf. is the subject of *necesse erat*.

quibus reportari possent=ut eis reportari possent: subjunctive of result. —*quibus*: abl. of instrument.

usui: dative of purpose: F. 134, 1; P. 82, (c).

et—erat: "and because it was generally understood that they had to winter in Gaul, corn had not been provided in these places for the winter."

omnibus constabat: literally, "it was agreed by all." Instead of the dative *omnibus* we also find *constare inter omnes*: B. VII. 44. 47.—*in hiemem*: when predetermination of future time is meant, the Latins use *in* with acc. Translate: "he called the Senate for the next day": "he called the Senate on the next day."

CHAPTER XXX.

quibus rebus cognitis: exppess this in other ways.

principes: subject of *duxerunt*.

inter se collocuti: "talking with one another"; F. 223; P. 91.

cum—intelligerunt—cognoscerunt : "when they understood—observed." *—intelligere* denotes a rational discernment by means of reflection : *cognoscere*, to know by the senses.

hoc : "on this account," "for this reason," explained afterwards by *quod* : causal ablative : F. 71, 3 ; P. 85, (m).

impedimentis : distinguish *impedimenta*, baggage of the legion : *sarcina*, of the individual soldier.

optimum factu : literally, "the best thing in the doing," *i.e.*, the best course. The supine in *—u* is the abl. of respect.

rebellione facta : "after the renewal of the war." Express this in other ways.

frumento commeatuque : "from corn and other supplies" : abl. of separation : see note B. III., chapter III.! F. 158, 2 (i) ; P. 85, (h).

rem—producere : "to drag along the war" : cp. *rem trahere* ; *bellum protrahere* or *extrahere*.

his superatis—interclusis : equivalent to conditional clause = *si hi superati essent—interclusi essent*.— With *reditu* : cp. B. I. 8. : *commeatu prohibere*.

conjuratione facta : "forming a league" : here used in a good sense : cp. *conjurant* : see note B. III. chapter VIII.

rursus = re versus : "back again" from peace to war.

paulatim : "little by little" : opposed to *universi*.

deducere : *i.e.*, to this place where they were going to make war, from the interior to the sea coast : note the force of *de* in *de ducere* : cp. κατα in κατάγειν.

CHAPTER XXXI.

cognoverat : "was familiar with" : note the plupf. of *cognosco* has the force of an imperf. and the perf. that of a present : F. 145, 1 ; P. 72.

ex eventu navium : "from what had happened to his ships."

ex eo quod : "from the fact that" : defined by the following clause."

fore—suspicabatur : "suspected that that would happen which actually did." The foresight of Caesar was one of his most prominent characteristics.

subsidia : "resources," literally, "succours." Elsewhere *subsidia* in Caesar means : (1) "reserves," "relieving forces" : (2) "the act of bringing relief" : B. VII. 86.

quotidie : "daily," expressing simple repetition : *in dies singulos* said of things daily increasing or decreasing : cp. note B. III. chapter XXIII.

qua naves, earum = earum navium quae. —naves : antecedent expressed in relative clause.

ad eas res = eis rebus : "for these purposes."

administraretur : impersonally, "it was carried out :" *i.e.*, his directions were carried out.

duodecim—amissis : concessive, "though twelve ships had been lost."

reliquis—effecit : literally "he so arranged that it might be suitably sailed

with the rest." —*reliquis* may be either (1) ablative of instrument or (2 blative of accompaniment.

CHAPTER XXXII.

dum geruntur: see note chapter XVII,, B. III.

frumentatum: "on a foraging expedition": F. 174, 3; P. 105.

ad id tempus: "up to this time."

ulla suspicione interposita: "any suspicion having arisen;" F. 100. 5, P. 85, (o).

hominum: "inhabitants:" here = *Britannorum.*

ventitaret: "continued to come:" note the force of the frequentative. So we have *actito* (from *agĕre*); *lectito* (from *lego*); *scriptito* (from *scribo*); *haesito* (from *haereo*); *visito* (from *video*). How are frequentatives formed? F. 303, (a); P. 75, iii.

in statione: "on guard:" called *stationes.* For the gates of a Roman camp see plan (introduction p. xix.)—*stationes* were properly guards at the gates of the camp: *excubiae,* guards by day or night: *vigiliae,* night guards only; *custodiae,* guards to defend the fortification. The guard was inspected by *circuitores,* and changed every three hours, *i.e.*, at the end of each watch.

quam consuetudo ferret: "than was usual"; "than custom admitted of." —*ut* is omitted after *quam.* For another reason for subjunctive: F. 195, 3; P. 10, p.

in ea parte—in quam partem: the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause is frequent in Caesar, and occurs when distinctness is required. In rendering into English omit the antecedent in the relative clause: see note chapter I. B. III.

id quod erat suspicatus: scil. *esse.* The indic. *erat* is used because the words are inserted by the writer and are not dependent on *suspicatus.* Note that *id* is used merely for emphasis as in Cic. de Off. 2, 6: *male se res habet, quum quod virtute effici debet, id temptatur pecunia.*

alliquid novi consilii: "some new plan:" literally, "something of a new plan:" partitive genitive.

in stationem succedere: "to take their place on guard" Note the idea of motion conveyed by the Latin *succedere* and hence *in* with accusative.

confestim: "immediately." Note the emphatic position of the adverb. It is connected with same root as in *festino,* "to hasten."

aegre sustinere, scil. *hostes:* "with difficulty were keeping the enemy in check." Compare the adverb *aegre.*

conferta legione: the ablative absolute denotes the cause of their being under a cross-fire: "in consequence of their being crowded together."

nam quod: "for since." —*nam* is taken with *delituerant:* while *quod* is joined to *erat.*

noctu: cp, *diu, interdiu, dudum* (= *diu-dum*): old ablatives.

tum—perturbaverant: "then suddenly attacking (our men) scattered, after they had laid aside their arms, and were busy in reaping, they (*i.e.* the enemy) threw the rest into confusion, after slaying a few, since the ranks

were irregular." With *dispersos*, scil. *nostros milites*. —*armis dispositis*: express this in other ways.

equitatu atque essedis circumdederant: scil. *nostros*. Express this by another construction.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

ex essedis: an adjective attributive of *pugnae*: "of the chariot fighting": *pugnae=pugnandi*: cp. B. I. 28: *genus hoc erat pugnae*.

primo: "at first." Both *primo*, and *primum* means, "for the first time": *primo*, also means "at first": *primum*, "firstly."

ipso—equorum: "by the sheer dread caused by their horses": ablative of instrument. What genitive is *equorum*?

strepitu: "rattling": cp. Claudian Epigram IV.: *esseda multisonora*.

ordines, scil. *hostium*.

insinuaverint: future perf. indic.: literally, "they shall have made their way." In English we would say, "they have made their way."

pedibus: "on foot": F. 71, 3; P. 85, (e).

aurigae: see note B. IV. Chapter XXIV.—*interim*: refers to a momentary space of time: *interea*, implies continued duration.

illi: refers to the retainers (*clientes*): see note B. IV. Chapter XXVI.

praestant: "secure."

tantum—efficiunt: "they became so proficient by daily experience and practice."

in—loco: "when the ground is sloping and even steep." Since the verb *sum* has no present participle in use, the prepositional ablative absolute is used for it. For the use of *ac*.

brevi, scil. *tempore*: "in a short time"; "in a moment,": cp. ἐν βραχεῖ, scil. χρόνῳ.

per temonem: "along the whole length of the pole." According to Max Müller (Science of Language, Vol. II., p. 402), *temo=tegmo*: connected with *tignum*. Varo (L. L. VII., 78), derives it from *teneo*, as *holding* the yoke.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

quibus rebus: some take this as a causal ablative: "and owing to these facts." Others supply *permotus* or *adductus*. Others again take them as ablative absolute: "when matters were in this state." Others make *rebus* the ablative of cause depending on *perturbatis*, or as a dative depending on *tulit*.

namque: cp. καί γάρ: "and (this was evident) for." *Namque* in Caesar and Cicero is usually used before a vowel and always the first word of a proposition.

ejus adventu: "on his arrival": ablative of time when.

quo facto: concessive abl. abs.: "though this was done."

ad lacessendum, scil. hostes: "for provoking the enemy to battle";

others take *lacessendum* a gerundive with *proelium*: "for provoking a battle."

alienum: "unfavourable.—*alienus* is rarely applied to things and when it is, it is opposed to *suus* or *opportunus*: cp. *locus suus*: "ground of his own chosing," *i.e.*, "favorable ground."

suo—loco: for the omission of in: cp. B. IV. chap, IV.

brevi—intermisso: "and a short time having elapsed": F. 100, 5; P. 85, (e).

dum—geruntur: see note B. III. chapter XVII.

continuos dies: acc. of duration of time: P. 69, 9; F. 83, (c).—*continuus*: denotes an unbroken succession: used (1) of time, as B. I. 48; V. 13: (2) of disaster, B, VII 14.

tempestates: see note on B, IV, chapter XXIII.

quae—continerent := *tales ut—continerent*: F, 188, 4, 5; P. 99, (b).

praedicaverunt: "openly boasted." Distinguish *praedico*, *praedico*.

praedae faciendae: "of securing booty." The phrase does not occur elsewhere in Caesar.

in perpetuum: either supply *tempus* or *perpetuum* in neut. adj. used as an abstract noun: "for ever:" cp. εἰς ἀίδιον.

si—expulissent: "if they should succeed in driving out:" the pluperfect denotes the accomplishment of the expulsion, and the subjunctive is used because of the virtual *oratio obliqua* in *demonstraverunt*.

daretur: "was offered:" dependent question: F. 176, 2; P. 99, (d).

his rebus: "by these representations," to their countrymen.

CHAPTER XXXV.

idem: subject of *fore*, and explained by the appositive clause *ut—effugerent*.—*effugerent*: means, they had escaped in the past and would do so in the future.

triginta: some commentators give CCC: others, XXX. The MSS., however, the latter.

diutius: join this word with non: "they could no longer stand."

quos=et eos: F. 232, note; P. 11, 195.

tanto spatio—potuerunt: "for such a distance as far as speed and strength allowed." Others take *spatio* as ablative absolute: "the distance being so great." —*cursu et viribus*: literally, "by running and strength:" ablative of instrument.

occiderunt, scil. *nostri milites*. Distinguish in meaning *occīderunt* and *occĭderunt*.

omnibus—incensis: "all the property far and wide being destroyed and burnt." —*affligere=solo aequare*: "to level to the ground." Another reading is *aedificiis incensis*.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

his—duplicavit : *duplico* follows the construction by analogy of *impero.*

quem ante imperaverat : see B. IV., chapter XXVII.

in continentem : "to the cont nent": see B. IV. chapter XXVII.

propinqua—aequinoctii : "as the day of the equinox was near": ablative absolute. The date of the equinox was September 24th. This remark shows how stubbornly the Britons opposed Caesar's advance. He landed on the 27th of August, and though he had been nearly a month attempting to gain possession of the island, we find him still at the sea shore.—*dies* is feminine here, as it usually is, when it means *time* generally or in the sense of a *fixed* or *appointed* day : cp. *die constituta, die dicta.*

infirmis—existimabat : literally, "he did not think that the voyage obght to be exposed to a storm, his ships being unseaworthy," *i.e.*, "he did not think that he on his voyage should run the risk of encountering a storm, seeing that his ships were unseaworthy."—*infirmis navibus* : ablative absolute or some say ablative of instrument with "unseaworthy ships," not a dative after *subjiciendam.—hiemi* : dative governed by *subjiciendam* : cp. B. VII. 77 : *et perpetuae servituti* (*Galliam*) *subjicere.*

eosdem—portus : *Bologne* or *Ambleteuse.*

paulo sunt : were carried down the channel below *Gesoriacum* (Boulogne), perhaps as far as the modern Etaples.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

ex navibus—expositi, scil. *in terram.* This refers to the *duae onerariae*

proficiscens : "in the act of setting out": = *cum proficisceretur.*

praedae : *praeda* = *prae-hend-a* or *prae-hid-a* : root HEND, Greek χαδ in χανδ—άνω, "to seize": cp. *praedium* = *praehendium.*

non ita : "with not so very large a number": instrumental ablative. This use of *ita* is limited like the English *so* to negative clauses : cp. B. V. 47 ; *non ita multum moratus.*

circumsteterunt, scil. *eos* : the three hundred.

nollent : F. 206, 6 ; P. 199, 214, (2). The *obliqua oratio* is implied in *jusserint. —orbe facto* : "having formed themselves into a circle." In Sallust (Jug. 97) we have a detailed account of this movement. The baggage was placed in the centre, and the soldiers, facing the enemy, formed a circle round it. In cases of extreme danger this movement was resorted to : cp. B. V. 33, where *Ambiorix* attacked Cotta and Sabinus.

celeriter : note the emphatic position. What would be the usual position.

ad clamorem : "at the shouts :" either *ad* means an answer to, in accordance with, or goes with *convenerunt.*

suis auxilio : "as a help to his men :" F. 134, 1 ; P. 82, (c).

amplius quator horis. What would be the ordinary construction? F 69, 9; P. 83, (c). For the ablative: cp. B. VII, 9: *longius triduo* B. IV., *longius anno.*

paucis vulneribus: "having sustained a trifling loss:"

postea vero quam=posteaquam vero.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Morinos: see note B. IV. chapter XXI.

siccitates: the plural may mean either the continued dryness or the dryness in many different marshes. Compare this statement with what Caesar says in B. IV. chap. 34. These two statements hardly agree.

quo se recipierent non haberent: "did not know where to retreat to." With *habeo*: cp. ἔχω. The subjunctive would represent a subjunctive in the direct narrative: *quo me recipiam?* "when am I to retreat?" So with a past tense: *quo me reciperem non habebam.*

quo—perfugio: "which as a refuge." It is best to make *perfugio* an example of an antecedent attracted into the case of the relative since it is in the same clause, or make the object of *haberent, locum* and *perfugio* a dative of purpose. Caesar probably refers to the marshes on the *Scheldt*: cp. B. II. chap. XVI, for similar conduct on the part of the Aedui.

superiore anno: B. C. 56; B. III. Chapter XXVIII.

quod—abdiderant: "because the Menapii had all concealed themselves by taking refuge in the thickest woods." What would be the meaning if *in silvis* had been the reading? cp. B. II. Chap. XVI: *qui in silvis abditi latebant.*

neglexerunt: scil. *hoc facere*: cp. B. III. Chap. XXVII: *ultimae nationes hoc facere neglexerunt.* Dion Cassius gives this as a reason for Caesar's second invasion to Britain.

his rebus gestis: "owing to their exploits:" causal abl. abs.

ex: "in accordance with:" —*dierum viginti*: genitive of description: F. 130, 7. 8; P. 156, 115.

supplicatio: the word may be either day of thanksgiving for national success, or a day of humiliation for national disaster. When a general gained a victory he sent a letter wreathed in laurels *(litterae laureatae)* to the Senate. If the victor deserved it, a thanksgiving *(supplicatio)* was usually appointed which generally lasted several days. The thanksgiving for Caesar's victory over the Belgae was held for fifteen days, an honor which Caesar says no one had obtained before: B. II. Chapter XXXVII. The thanksgiving for his victory over Vercingetorix also lasted twenty days: B. VII. Chapter XC.

PROPER NAMES.

ABBREVIATIONS.

adj. = adjective; f. = feminine; m. = masculine; N. = noun; n. = neuter; pl. = plural; sing. = singular.

A.

Adcantŭannus, -i; N. m.: *Adcantuannus*, a chief of the Sotiates. He endeavoured together with six hundred devoted partisans (*soldurii*) to escape from the town of the Sotiates when it was attacked by Crassus, one of the lieutenants of Caesar. He was unsuccessful in his attempt and was driven back into the town and forced to surrender: (B. III. chap. XXII.)

Allŏbrŏges, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Allobroges*, a people of Gaul between Isara (*Isere*) and the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) in the country occupied by *Dauphine*, *Savoy*, and *Piedmont*. Their chief city was Vienna (*Vienne*), about thirteen miles below Lugdunum (*Lyons*). The word signifies "highlanders," from *al*, "high; *broga*, "land."

Alpes, -ium; N. pl. f.: *the Alps* derive their name from the Keltic *alp*, "high" or "white." Their length is about 600 English miles. The following are the names given to the divisions of this chain: *Alpes Maritimae*, from Nice to Mt. Viso; *Alpes Cottiae*, from Mt. Viso to Mt. Cenis; *Alpes Graiae*, from Mt. Iseran to Little St. Bernard; *Alpis Penninae*, from Great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhine and Rhone; *Alpes Rhaeticae*, from St. Gothard to Mt. Brenner in the Tyrol; *Alpes Noricae*, from Mt. Brenner to the head of the river Plavis; *Alpes Carnicae* vel *Juliae*, extending from the head of the river Plavis to the confines of Illyricum.

Ambīlĭāti, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Ambiliati*, a people of ancient Gaul, in the neighbourhood of the modern Abbeville.

Ambĭvārĭti, -ōrum; N. pl. m.; the *Ambivariti*, a people of ancient Gaul, near the Mosa (*Meuse*).

Andes, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Andes*, a Gallic tribe that occupied the modern *Anjou* or what is now called *Department de la Mayenne*. They occupied the north bank of the Liger (*Loire*), not far from its mouth. Tacitus and Pliny called them Andicavi or Andegavi. Caesar says that they were near the sea, and in this statement he is inaccurate as the Nannetes intervened (B. II., C. XXXV.; B. III., C. VII.; B. VII., C. IV.).

Ăquĭtāni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Aquitanians*, one of the three great divisions of Gaul, inhabiting Aquitania, the district between the Garumna (*Garonne*) and the Pyrenees. They resembled the Iberi more than they did the Ganls.

Ăquĭtānĭa, -ae; N. sing. f.: *Aquitania*, a district of Gaul between the Garumna (*Garronne*) and the Pyrenees. According to Strabo, the Aquitani differed from the Gauls both in physical features and in language. They resembled the Iberians.

Ăquĭtānus, a, ŭm; Adj.: *an Aquitanian*: see Aquitani.

Ărĭŏvistus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Ariovistus*, a king of the Germans who invaded Gaul, conquered the greater portion of the kingdom and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Caesar marched against him and defeated him in battle. He died of wounds or through chagrin at his defeat. His name is probably from the German *Heer*, "an army": *Fürst*, "a leader"; or from *Aar*, "an eagle," and *Vistus*, a Latinized form of *first = horst*, "a nest": the word would then signify *eyry*.

Ătrĕbas, -ātis; adj.: *an Atrebatian*.

Atrĕbātes, -ĭum ; N. pl. m. : *the Atrebatians*, a people of *Gallia Belgica*, of high renown for valour. Their territory lay S. E. from that of the Morini and S. W. from that of the Nervii, answering to the modern *Artois* in the *Department du Pas de Calais*. Their chief town was Nemetocenna (now *Arras*, or as the Flemings call it, *Atrecht*).

Aulerci, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : *the Aulerci*, a general name applied to four different tribes in Gaul.

(1) *Aulerci Brannovices*, clients of the Aedui, whose territory lay between the latter and the Sequani, and corresponded to the modern *Briennois*.

(2) *Aulerci Cenomanni* : N. W. from the former, above the Andes and the Turones ; and west of the Carnutes ; their territory corresponded to the modern *Department de la Sarthe*. Their capital was Suindinum, afterwards Cenomanni, now *Maus*.

(3) *Aulerci Eburones* : often called simply *Eburones*, N. W. of the Carnutes, along the west bank of the Sequana (*Seine*), above Lutetia (*Paris*). Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Eburovices, now *Evreux*.

(4) *Aulerci Diablintes* ; N. W. of the Cenomanni ; their chief town was Neodunum, afterwards Diablintes (now *Jableins*).

Ausci, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. ; *the Ausci*, a people of Aquitania in ancient Gaul.

Auruncŭleius, -i; N. sing. m. : *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

B.

Băcŭlus : N. sing. m. : *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion of the front rank in the army of Caesar, who on several occasions distinguished himself for his valour (B. II., C. XXV. ; B. III., C. V. ; B. VI., C. XXVIII).

Bātāvōrum Insŭla : that portion of Holland bounded on two sides by the northern and southern branches of the Rhine and on the third by the sea. It corresponds at the present day to a part of the Duchy of *Gueldres* and a large portion of Southern Holland. (B. IV. C. X).

Belgae, -ārum : N. pl. m. : *the Belgae*, a people of Ancient Gaul, separated from the Keltae in the time of Caesar by the rivers Matrona (*Marne*) and Sequana (*Seine*).

Bigerrīōnes, -um ; N. pl. m : *the Bigerriones*, a people of Aquitania, at the foot of the Pyrenees, to the west of the Garumni.

Brĭtannĭa, -ae ; N. sing, f. : the island of *Great Britain*.

Brĭtanni, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : *the Britons*.

Brūtus, -ī ; N. sing. m. : *Brutus*, the commander of the Roman fleet in the war against the Veneti.

C.

C. = Cāĭus : a Roman *praenomen*.

Caesar, -is ; *Caesar* : see Life of Caesar in *Introduction*.

Cantabri, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : *the Cantabri*, a warlike people of the N. E. of Spain, along the shores of the Sinus Cantabricus (*Bay of Biscay*). Their country corresponded to the modern Biscay and part of *Asturias*.

Carcăso, -ōnis ; N. sing. m : *Carcaso*, a city of the Volcae Tectosages, in the Roman Province. It was situated on the river Atax (*Aude*) and lay inland in a western direction from Narbo Martius (*Narbonne*). It is now called *Carcasonne*.

Cnēĭus, -i ; N. sing. m. : *Cneius*, a Roman *praenomen*.

Cŏcōsātes, -ĭum ; N. pl. m. : *the Cocosates*, a people of Aquitania, lying along the coast of the Sinus Cantabricus (*Bay of Biscay*). Their chief city was Cocossa on the coast, some distance above Aquae Angustae (now *Acqs* or *Dun*) ; B. III., C. XXVII).

Commĭus, -i ; N. sing. m. : *Commius*, a chief of the Atrebatians.

Condrūsi, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : *the Condrusi*, a people of Gallia Belgica on the Mōse (*Meuse*), to the north of the Trēvĭri and Paemani.

Cotta, ae ; N. sing. m. : see *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*.

Crassus, -i; N. sing. m.: *M. Licinius Crassus*, surnamed *Dives*, was a member of the first triumvirate 59 B. C. He was consul also in 70 B. C., and in 55 B. C. He was noted for his enormous wealth. At *Carrhae* he fell in battle against the Parthians

Cūrĭōsŏlĭtae, -ārum; N. pl. m.: *the Curiosolitae*, an Armoric nation in Gaul, north of the Veneti and northwest of the Redones. They occupied the district of the modern *St. Malo*, between *Dinant* and *Lambelle*, in Britanny. (B. II., C. XXXIV).

D.

Dĕcĭmus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Decimus*, a Roman *praenomen*.

Dĕcŭmānus, -a -um; adj.: *Decuman*, a name given to one of the gates of a Roman camp.

Dĭăblintes, -ĭum; N. pl. m.: *the Diablintes*, a branch of the Aulerci (see *Aulerci*).

E.

Ēbūrōnes, -um: N. pl. m.: *the Eburones*, a nation of Gallia Belgica to the S. W. of the Ubii. Caesar mentions them as Germans. Their territory lay on both sides of the Mosa (*Meuse*) from the modern *Liege* to *Aix-la-Chapelle*. Their chief town was Aduatuca (B. II., C. IV.)

Ebūrŏvīces, -um; N. pl m.: *the Eburovices*, a branch of the Aulerci; (see *Aulerci*).

Elŭsātes, -ĭum; N. pl. m.: *the Elusates*, a people of Aquitania, to the northwest of the Volcae Tectosages. Their chief town was Elusa (now *Euse*). B. III. C. XXVII.

Esŭbĭī, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Esubii*, a people in the Alpes Maritimae, north of the Edenates. They are sometimes called Esubiani The river *Ubaye* runs through what was formerly their territory; (B. III., C. VII.)

G.

Galba, -ae; N. sing. m.: *Servius Galba*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Gallĭcus, -a -um; adj.: *Gallic*: of or belonging to Gallia

Gallĭa, -ae; N. sing. f.: *Gaul*, corresponding to France and the northern Italian provinces of Piedmont, Venetia and Lombardy. Gaul was in Caesar's time divided into *Gallĭa Transalpina* or *Gallia Ulterior*, Gaul beyond the Alps, comprising nearly all France; and *Gallĭa Cisalpina*, or *Gallia Citerior*, Gaul, this side of the Alps, or northern Italy.

Gallus, -i; N. sing. m.: *a Gaul*.

Garītes, -ĭum; N. pl. m.: *the Garites*, a people of Aquitania, between the Elusates and Ausci, in part of *Gascony*, or the more modern department of *du Gers*.

Garumni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Garumni*, a Gallic tribe, near the head waters of the Garumna (*Garonne*), in the department of *de la Haute-Garonne*.

Germāni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Germans*, a general name given by the Romans to the nations dwelling east of the Rhine. The word is probably from either (1), *wer*, "war" (the Romans softening w to g) and *mann*, "a man"; so that the word would mean "warriors," or (2), from the Keltic *gerr*, "war" and *mann*, "a man." Other derivations are given.

Germānĭa, -ae; N. sing. f.: *Germany*.

H.

Helvetĭī, -ōrum: N. pl. m.: *the Helvetii*, a nation conquered by Caesar. It is generally supposed that Helvetia corresponded to modern *Switzerland*, but the boundaries of the ancient province were much narrower than those of the modern Switzerland, being bounded on the north by the Rhenus and Lacus Brigantinus (*Lake of Constance*); on the south by the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) and Lacus Lemannus (*Lake of Geneva*), and on the west by Mt. Jura.

Hispānĭa, -ae; N. sing. f.: *Spain*. The name is derived from a corrupt form of ἑσπερία, "the western land"; cp. ἕσπερος, "the evening star"; *vesper*, "the evening."

I.

Illȳrĭcum, -i; N. sing. n.: *Illyricum*, the modern district now occupied by *Dalmatia*, *Bosnia*, and *Herzegovina*.

Ităl̆ĭa, -ae; N. sing. f.: *Italy*: a country of Southern Europe.

L.

Lăbĭēnus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Titus Labienus* was one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic wars. In the beginning of the civil wars he left Caesar for Pompey. He escaped at Pharsalia, but fell at Munda.

Lemannus, -i; N. sing. m.: now Lake of *Geneva*, separating the territory of the Helvetii from that of Gaul. It is about 45 miles long by 11 wide.

Lĕŏpontĭi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Leopontii*, a Galic tribe dwelling near the sources of the Rhine among the Leopontine Alps, which separated Italy from Helvetia. Their district corresponded to the Val Levantina, that part of the Alps

Lexovĭi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Lexovii*, a nation of Keltic Gaul, on the coast below the mouth of the Sequana. Their capital was Noviomagus, afterwards called Lexovii (now *Lisieux*: B. III., chap. IX., XVII; B. VII. chap. LXXV.)

Lĭger, -ĕris; N. sing. m.: *the Loire*, the largest river in Gaul. It rises in Mons Cebennus (now *Cevennes*), and for the one half of its course was directly north, then turns to the west and falls into the Atlantic between the territories of the Pictones and the Nannetes. The Liger receives numerous tributaries, the most remarkable of which are the Elaver (now *Allier*), Carus (now *Cher*), Andria (now *Indre*) and Vincennia (now *Vienne*).

Lūcĭus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Lucius*, a Roman *praenomen*.

M.

M. = Marcus: a Roman *praenomen*.

Manlĭus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Manlius*, a Roman *praenomen*.

Mediŏmatrĭci, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Mediomatrici*, a people of Gaul in the neighbourhood of the modern *Metz*.

Mĕnăpĭi, ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Menapii*, a nation of *Gallia Belgica* occupying both sides of the river Rhine. Their town was called *Castellum*.

Mĕnāpĭōrum castellum; (now *Kessel*) on the Mosa (*Meuse*): B. II. C. IV.

Mŏrīni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Morini*, a tribe of Gallia Belgica, whose territory lay in the district of Calais and Dunkirk, a part of their territory bordering on the sea. Their name means "sea people": being derived from the Keltic *mor*, (Latin *mare*), "the sea."

Mŏsa, -ae; N. sing. m.: *the Meuse*, a river of Gaul, rising among the Lingones, a little west of Mt. Vosegus, and falling into the Vahalis (now *Waal*): B. IV. C. X.

N

Nannētes, -ĭum; N. pl. m.: *the Nannetes*, a people of *Gallia Celtica* who dwelt about the district of the modern Nantes.

Nantŭātes, -ĭum; N. pl. m.: *the Nantuates*, a people who dwelt in the neighborhood of Geneva.

Narbo, -ōnis; N. sing. m.: *Narbo*, an important city of Gaul on the river Atax (now *Aude*). It was subsequently the capital of the province of *Gallia Narbonensis*. (B. III., C. XX.; B. VII., C. VII., B. VIII., C. XL. VI.)

Nervĭcus, -a, -um: adj.: of or belonging to the *Nervii*.

O.

Ocĕănus, -i; N. sing. m.: *the Ocean*, *i.e.*, the Atlantic in contradistinction to the Mediterranean.

Octodūrus, -i; N. sing. m.: now *Martigny* or *Martinach*, the chief town of the Veragri (B. III., Chap. I.)

Osismĭi, -ōrum ; N. pl. m : *the Osismii*, a people of *Gallia Celtica*, in the N. W. of Gaul. They occupied the part of modern Brittany, around Cape Finisterre. In their country was Brivates Portus (now *Brest*).

P.

P. = Publĭus ; a Roman *praenomen*.

Pictŏnes, -um ; N. pl. m.: *the Pictones* a Gallic tribe along the southern bank of the Liger (*Loire*). Their chief town was *Lominum*, afterwards Pictones (now *Poitiers*) in the department *de la Vienne*. They occupied the district of the modern *Poitou*.

Piso, -onis ; N. sing. m.: an Aquitanian. (See B. IV., C. XII.)

Pompēĭus, -i ; N. sing. m.: *Cneius Pompeius*, the Roman triumvir. (See Roman history).

Praecōnĭnus, -i ; N. sing. m.: *Praeconinus*, a Roman *cognomen*.

Prĕcĭāni, ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *the Precĭani*, a people of *Aquitania*.

Prŏvincĭa, -ae ; N. sing. f.: *the Provincia*, the southern part of Gaul, called afterwards *Gallia Braccata* and *Gallia Narbonensis*.

Publĭus, -i ; N. sing. m.: a Roman *praenomen*.

Q.

Q. = Quintus ; *Quintus*, a Roman *praenomen*

R.

Rēmi, -ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *the Remi* : a people of Gaul inhabiting the neighbourhood of the modern *Rheims*.

Rhēnus, -i ; N. sing. m.: *the Rhine*, rising in the Leopontine Alps, a little above *St. Gothard*, in the country of the *Grisons*. It passes through lacus Brigantinus, (*Lake Constance*), and flows through lacus Acronius, (*Lake Tell*), nearly west to Basilia (*Basle*)

Rhŏdănus ; N. sing. m.: *the Rhone*, a river rising in the Leopontine Alps, not more than two leagues from the sources of the Rhine. It passes through Lake Lemannus (*Lake of Geneva*), and flows in a swift current to the sinus Gallicus (*Gulf of Lyons*). The word is derived from the Aryan root SRU, "to flow."

Rōma ; N. sing. f.; *Rome*: (the word is probably from the Aryan root SRU, "to flow" ; Rōma = *Srouma* = "the stream town.")

Rōmānus, -a, -um ; adj.: *Roman*.

S.

Sābīnus ; N. sing. m.: *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of the legati of Caesar.

Santŏni, -ōrum : or Santŏnes, -um : N. pl. m.; *the Santoni* or *Santones*, a people of Gallia Keltica, whose territories lay between the Pictones on the north and the Garumna on the south. Their chief town was Mediolanum, called Santones, now *Saintes*.

Sedūni, -ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *the Seduni*, a people of Helvetia, dwelling among the Alps.

Sĕquāni, -ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *the Sequani*, a people of Gallia Celtica. They called in the aid of Ariovistus, a king of the Germans, to aid them against the Aedui. After the defeat of their German allies they severely felt the power of the Aedui. Caesar, however, restored them to their former power. Their chief town was Vesontio (now *Besançon*).

Sertōrĭus, -i ; N. sing. m.: *Sertorius*, a Roman General.

Servĭus, -i ; N. sing. m.: *Servius*, a Roman name.

Sigambri, -ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *the Sigambri*, a powerful German tribe dwelling near the Rhine, south of the river, the Ruhr.

Sesūvii, -ōrum ; N. pl. m.: *the Sesuvii*, a nation in the N. W. part of Gaul. Their position was the modern diocese of *Sées*.

Sextĭus, -i ; N. sing. m.: *Sextius*, a Roman name.

Sibuzates, -ĭum; N. pl. m.: *the Sibuzates*: a people, *Gallia Aquitanica*.

Silĭus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Silius*, a Roman name.

Sotĭātes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Sotiates*, a people of *Gallia Aquitanica*.

Sulpĭtius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Sulpitius*, a Roman name.

Suēvi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Suevi*, a powerful tribe of northern and eastern Germany. Their name still exists in *Suabia*.

T.

T. = Titus: a Roman *praenomen*.

Tarbelli, -ōrum; N. pl. m: *the Tarbelli*, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Tarŭsātes, -ĭum; N. pl. m.: *the Tarusates*, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Terrasĭdĭus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Titus Terrandius*, a Roman officer in Caesar's army.

Titŭrĭus, -ĭi; N. sing. m.: *Titurius*, a Roman name.

Tenctherĭ, ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Tenctheri*, a German city on the Rhine.

Tolōsa, -ae; N. sing. f.: *Tolosa* (now *Toulouse*), a tribe in southern Gaul.

Transrhēnāni: see *Transrhenanus*.

Transrhēnanus, -a, -um; [*trans*, "across;" *Rhēnus*, "the Rhine."]: *a dweller across the Rhine, that which is across the Rhine*.

Trebĭus, -ĭi: N. sing. m.: *Trebius*, a Roman name.

Trēvĭri, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Treviri*, a native of Gallia Belgica N. E. of the Rhine, between the Mosa (*Meuse*) and the Rhenus (*Rhine*), their chief city was Augusta Trevirorum (now *Treves*).

Trĭbŏci, ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Tribroci*, a German tribe on the left bank of the Rhine, in the modern Alsace.

U.

Ubĭi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Ubii*, a German tribe near the modern *Cologne*.

Unelli, -ōrum: N. pl. m.: *the Unelli*, a people to the N. W. of what is now *Normandy*. Their chief town was Coriallum (now *Gouril*).

Usĭpētes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Usipetes*, a German tribe near the Teuctheri.

V.

Văhālis, -is; N. sing. m.: *the Vahalis* (now *Waal*) forming the left arm of the Rhine.

Vălĕrĭus, -ĭi; N. sing. m.: *Valerius*, a Roman name.

Velānius, -ĭi; N. sing. m.: *Velanius*, an officer in Caesar's army.

Vĕnĕti, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Veneti*, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the western extremity, above *Nannetes*, and the mouth of the Liger (*Loire*), and bordering on the Atlantic. They were the most powerful among the Armoric states, and were conspicuous for their skill in navigation. Their chief town was Darioigum, afterwards called Veneti (now *Vannes*).

Vĕnētĭcus, -a, -um; dj. s ee *Veneti*.

Vĕnētĭa, -ae: N. sing. f. See *Veneti*.

Vĕrāgri, -ōrum: N. pl. m.: *the Veragri*, a tribe who dwelt amid the Alps. Their chief town was Octodurus (now *Martigny* or *Martinach*).

Vĭrĭdōvix, -icis; N. sing. m.: *Viridovix* a chief of the Unelli.

Vocātes, -ĭum; N. pl. m.: *the Vocates*, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Vŏlŭsēnus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Volusenus*, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

Vŏsĕgus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Vosegus* (now *Vosges*), a mountain chain in Gaul.

VOCABULARY

ABBREVIATIONS.

a. *or* act. . . .	active.
abl.	ablative.
acc.	accusative.
acc. to	according to.
adj.	adjective.
adv.	adverb.
c=cum	with.
cf. = confer . . .	compare.
ch	chapter.
comm. gen . . .	common gender.
comp.	comparative degree.
conj	conjunction.
contr	contracted.
dat.	dative.
def. defect . . .	defective.
dem. demonstr. .	demonstrative.
dep.	deponent.
desid	desiderative.
dissyll.	dissyllable.
esp.	especially.
etym	etymology.
f.	feminine.
follg	followed.
fr	from.
freq	frequentative.
fut.	future.
gen.	genitive.
gov.	governing.
Gr.	Greek.
imperf	imperfect.
inch	inchoative.
ind. *or* indic . .	indicative.
indecl.	indeclinable.
indef	indefinite.
inf. *or* infin. . .	infinitive.
intens.	intensive.
interj.	interjection.
interrog	interrogative.
irr. *or* irreg. . .	irregular.
m	masculine.
n. *or* neut . . .	neuter.
nom	nominative.
num	numeral.
o. h. g.	old High German
obsol	obsolete.
ord	ordinal.
p. *or* part . . .	participle.
pa	participial adj.
pass	passive.
perf	perfect.
pers	person, personal.
pluperf	pluperfect.
plur	plural.
pos	positive degree.
poss	possessive.
prep	preposition.
pres	present.
prob	probably.
pron	pronoun.
rel.	relative.
Sans	Sanscrit.
semi-dep . . .	semi-deponent.
sing	singular.
subj	subjunctive.
sup	superlative ; supine.
trisyll.	trisyllable.
t. t.	technical term.
uncontr	uncontracted.
v. a.	verb active.
v. dep	verb deponent.
v. n.	verb neuter.
voc.	vocative.
=	equal to.

N. B.—The figures before v. a., v. dep., and v. n., denote the conjugation of the verb.

Where the etymology is not given, the word is of very uncertain or unknown origin.

Such forms and meanings of words, as do not belong to the text, are not inserted in the Vocabulary.

VOCABULARY.

A.

ab (a), prep. gov. abl.: *From, away from. On the side of*: *in the direction of.* Without Abl. of place, and in combination with ablative of distance: *Away, off*: ab millibus passuum octo, *eight miles off. On, at, in.* Of the agent: *By* [akin to Gr. ἀπ-ό; English *off.*]

ab-do, dĭdi, dĭtum, dĕre, 3. v. a. [ăb, "away"; do, "to put"]. With personal pron. in reflexive force: *To hide*, or *conceal, one's self* by withdrawing.

ab-jĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for ab-jăcio; f. ăb, "away"; jăcio, "to throw"] *To throw*, or *fling, away.*

ab-scindo, scĭdi, scissum, scindĕre, 3. v. a. [ab, "away"; scindo, "to tear *or* rend"] *To tear* or *rend away*; *to sever.*

abs-ens, ntis, pa. [abs-um, "to be absent"] *Absent.*

ab-sīmĭlis, sīmĭle, adj. [ab. in "negative" force; sĭmĭlis. "like"] *Unlike to*: non absimilis, *not unlike to*, i.e. *resembling.*

abs-trăho, traxi, tractum, trăhĕre, 3. v. a. [abs (=ab), "away"; trăho, "to drag"] *To drag* or *tear away.*

ab-sum, fŭi, esse, v. n. [ăb, "away"; sum, "to be"] *To be away, to be absent* or *distant. To be wanting.* Impers.: neque longius abesse, quin, *and that it was not very far wanting, but that* or *from.*

ac; see atque.

ac-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3. v. n. [for ad cēdo; fr. ad, "to"; cēdo, "to go"] *To go to* or *up to*; *to draw near, approach*; *to be added.* Impers.: accessit, *it was added.*

ac-cĭdo, cĭdi, no sup., cĭdĕre, 3. v. n. [for ad-cădo; fr. ad, "upon"; cădo. "to fall"] Of missiles: *To fall upon, reach, strike, hit*, the mark. *To fall out, happen, come to pass.*

ac-cĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, cĭpĕre, 3. v. a. [for ad-căpĭo: fr. ad, "to"; căpĭo, "to take"] *To receive.*

ac-clīv-is, e, adj. [for ad-clivis; fr. ăd, "up, upward"; clivus, "a hill"] *Uphill*; *inclining* or *sloping upwards*; *ascending.*

accommŏdā-tus, ta, tum, adj. [accommod(a)-o, "to adapt"] With Dat. *or* ad: *Adapted to*; *appropriate*, or *suitable, to.*

ac-curro, curri *and* cŭcurri, cursum, currĕre, 3. v. n. [for adcurro; fr. ăd, "to"; curro, "to run"] With ad: *To run to* or *up to.*

ăc-ĭes, ēi, f. [ac, root of ăc-ŭo, "to sharpen"] *Order* or *line, of battle.*

ācr-ĭter, adv. [ācer, acr-is, "sharp"] *Sharply, vigorously.*

ăd, prep. gov. acc.: *To, up to*; *on to*; *in the direction of. To* or *for. For the purpose of. According to, after.*

ad-aequo, aequāvi, aequātum, aequāre, 1. v. a. [ad, "to"; aequo, "to make equal"] *To make equal to* in height; *to raise to a level with.*

ad-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [ăd, "to"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead to* or *up. To draw*, or *pull, towards one. To excite, prompt, move, induce.*

ad-ĕo, īvi *or* ĭi, ĭtum, īre, v. n. [ad, "to"; ĕo, "to go"] *To go to.*

ăd-ĕo, adv. [prob. for ăd-ĕom; fr ăd, "to *or* up to"; ĕom (=ĕum), old acc. of pron. is] *So, so much, so very.*

ăd-hĭbĕo, hĭbŭi, hĭbĭtum, hĭbēre, 2. v. a. [for ăd-hăbĕo; fr. ăd, "to"; hăbĕo, "to have *or* hold"] Of things: *To employ, use.*

ăd-huc, adv. [ad, "up to"]; huc (old form of hoc), "this"] Of time: *Up to this time, hitherto.*

ăd-īgo, ēgi, actum, īgĕre, 3. v. a. [for ăd-ăgo; fr. ăd, "to"; ăgo, "to drive"] Of piles: *To drive home, ram in.*

ădĭ-tus, tūs, m. [ădĕo, "to go to," ad "to": īre "to go."] *Means of approach, access.*

ad-jĭcĭo, jēci, jectum. jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for ad-jăcio; fr. ăd "to"; jăcio, "to cast"] *To add. To cast or throw, upon.*

ad-jungo, junxi, junctum, jungĕre, 3. v. a. [ăd, "to"; jungo, "to join"] *To annex,*

ad-mīnistro, mĭnistrāvi, mĭnistrātum, mĭnistrāre, 1. v. a. [ăd, "to"; mĭnistro, "to act the part of a *minister* or servant"] *To execute, carry out, perform,*

ad-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [ăd, "to"; mitto, "to allow to go"] Of a crime, *etc.*: *To become guilty of*; *to commit, perpetrate.*

ad-mŏdum, adv. [ad, "according to"; mŏdum, acc. of mŏdus, "measure"] *Exceedingly, very.*

ădŏlesc-ens, entis, comm. gen. [P. pres. and pa. of adolesc-o, "to grow up," used as Subst.] *A young person* of either sex; *a youth.*

ădŏlescent-ŭlus, ŭli, m. dim. [adolescens, adolescent-is] *A mere youth; quite a young man.*

ăd-ŏrĭor, ortus sum, ōrīri, 4. v. dep. [ăd, "against"; ŏrĭor, "to rise"] *To attack, assault, assail.*

adven-tus, tūs, m. [ad, "to"; venio, "to come"] *Arrival.*

adver-sus, sa, sum, adj. [for advertsus, fr. advert-o, "to turn towards"] Of locality: With Dat. *Over against, opposite to, fronting.*

adver-sus, prep. gov. acc. [ad, "towards"; versus, "turned"] In hostile sense: *Against.*

ad-verto, verti, versum, vertĕre, 3. v. a. [ăd, "to,"; verto, "to turn"] *To turn to* or *towards*: animum advĕrtere, *to turn the mind to* a thing, i.e. *to perceive, observe.*

aedĭfĭc-ĭum, ĭi, n. [aedĭfĭc-o] *A building* of any kind.

aedĭfĭc-o, āvi, ātum, āre. l. v. a. [for aed-i-fac-o, fr. aed-es, "an abode"; (i) connecting vowel; fac, root of făc-io, "to make"] *To build, construct.*

aegr-e, adv. [aeger, aegr-i, "ill," "sick"] *With difficulty.*

aequ-ĭ-noct-ĭum, ĭi, n. [aequ-us, "equal"; (i) connecting vowel; nox, noct-is, "night."] *The equinox.*

aequus, a, um, adj. *Favourable, advantageous.*

aer-ārĭus, ārĭa, ārĭum, adj. [aes, aeris, "copper"] *Of copper; copper.*

aes, aeris, n. *Bronze, copper.*

aes-tas, tātis, f. *Summer* [root IDH, "to burn": cp. αἴθηρ, αἴθω; aedes, aestus].

aes-tĭmo, tĭmāvi, tĭmātum, tĭmāre, 1. v. a. [prob. for aertĭmo; fr. aes, aer-is, "money"] *To estimate, reckon.*

aestŭ-ārĭum, ārĭi, n. [aestus, uncontr. Gen. aestŭ-is, see aestas] *A part of the coast which the sea alternately covers and leaves; a salt-marsh. A creek, estuary.*

aes-tus, tūs, m. *The tide* (see aestas).

af-fīgo, fixi, fixum, fīgĕre, 3. v. a. [for ad-fīgo; fr. ad, "to *or* on to"; fīgo, "to fix"] With Dat. *To fix to* or *on to*; *to fasten*, or *attach to.*

afflic-to, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a. intens. [for afflig-to; fr. afflig-o, "to damage"] *To greatly damage, shatter.*

af-flīgo, flixi, flictum, flīgĕre, 3. v. a. [for ad-fligo; fr. ăd, "to"; fligo, "to dash *or* strike"] Of vessels: *To shatter, damage.*

ăger, ăgri, m. *A field, land*, whether arable *or* pasture [root AG, "to drive": first applied to driven cattle: then to whom they were driven: cp. Gk. ἀγρός; Goth., *akrs*; German, *acker*; English, *acre.*]

agger, ĕris, m. [ad. "to"; gero, "to carry"] *A mound* raised for military purposes.

ag-grĕgo, grĕgāvi, grĕgātum, grĕgāre, 1. v. a. [for ad-grĕgo; fr. ăd, "to"; grex, grĕg-is, "a flock"] *To attach one's self*, etc., *to.*

ag-men, mĭnis, n. *The march*, or *passage*, of an army. *An army* on the march; *a column* advancing.

ăgo, ēgi, actum, ăgĕre, 3. v. a. Of military engines: *To bring forward, advance.* Of mines: *To push forward, drive.* Of actions in general: *To do, perform, undertake.* Of war, *etc.*: *To conduct, carry on, wage* (see ager.]

ăgr-ĭ-cul-tūra, tūrae, f. [for ăgr-i-coltūra; fr. ăger, ăgr-i; (i) connecting vowel; cŏl-o, "to till"] *A tilling of the land; tillage, agriculture.*

ălăcer, cris, cre, adj. *Quick, forward, prompt, eager.*

ălăcr-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [ălăcer, ălăcr-is,] "quick, active"] *Alacrity, ardour.*

ălĭ-as, adv. [ălĭ-us] *At another time*: ălĭas..ălĭas, *at one time..at another time; now..now.*

ălĭ-ēnus, ēna, ēnum, adj. [ălĭ-us, "another" *Belonging to another. Unfavourable, unsuitable* [ălĭus, "another"].

ălĭquant-o, adv. [aliquantus, "some"] With comparative words (the force depending on the context): *Somewhat*; *considerably, much*; *a little.*

ălĭ-qui, qua, quod (Gen.: ălĭcŭjus; Dat.: ălĭcui; Plur.: ali-qui, quae, qua). indef. pron. adj. [ălĭ-us; qui (indefinite pron.), "any"] *Some.*

ălĭ-quis, quid (Gen.: ălĭcŭjus; Dat.: ălĭcui; Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur, not used), indef. pron. subst. [ălĭ us; quis] *Some one, somebody*; *something.* Neut.

with Gen. of 1st or 2nd decl.: *Something of=some.*

ălĭ-quot, indef. num. adj. indecl. [ălĭ-us; quot, "as many"] *Some, several.*

ăl-ĭter, adv. [ăl-is, old form of ăl-ĭus *In another manner, otherwise.*

ăl-ĭus, ĭa, ĭud (Gen.: ălĭus; Dat.; ălĭi), adj.: *Another, other*, of many: ălĭus..ălĭus, *one..another*: alius..atque (ac), *other..than, different..from*, As Subst.: ălĭi, ōrum, m. plur. *Other persons, others*: ălĭi..ălĭi, *some..others. Of another nature, different* [akin to ἀλ-λος].

ăl-o, ŭi, ĭtum *and* tum, ĕre, 3. v. a.: *To nourish, maintain. To foster, cherish*, [root AL or OL, "to grow": cp. ad-olesco: sub-ol-esco; Greek ἀλθω].

al-ter, tĕra, tĕrum (Gen.; altĕrĭus: Dat.: altĕri), adj. *The other* of two: alter..alter, *the one..the other* [see alius].

alt-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [alt-us, "high"] *Height.*

altum, ī; see altus.

al-tus, ta, tum, adj. [ăl-o, "to nourish"] *High, lofty. Deep.* — As Subst.: altum, i. n. *The deep; the main* or *open sea* [see alo for root].

ălūta, ae, f. *Aluta;* a description of *leather* softened by some process; *a dressed skin.*

ămīc-ĭtĭa, ĭtĭae, f. [ămīc-us, "a friend"] *Friendship.*

ăm-īcus, īca, īcum, adj. [am-o] *Loving, friendly, kind.* As Subst.: ămīcus, i. m. *A friend.*

ā-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [ā, "from"; mitto, "to let go"] *To let go from one; to let slip. To lose.*

ampl-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [ampl-us, "ample"] *Extent, size.*

amplĭus, comp. adverb [adverbial neut. sing. of amplior, comp. of amplus] Of time: *More, longer, further.* Of number: *More, beyond*: non amplius octingentos equites, *eight hundred cavalry, no more*, i.e. *not more than eight hundred cavalry.*

am-pl-us, a, um, adj. [am, "around"; pl-ĕo, "to fill"] *Ample, extensive. Noble, distinguished, illustrious.*

an, conj. [prob. a primitive word] Introducing the second half of a disjunctive sentence: *Or*: an..an, *whether..or*; see, also, ne.

ancŏra, ae. f. *An anchor*: in ancoris, *at anchor* [root ANK, "to bend"; cp. angulus, ἀγκών].

angust-ĭae, ĭārum, f. plur. [angust-us, "narrow"; hence, "critical, difficult." *Difficulties, critical circumstances, perplexities.*

ănĭm-adverto, adverti, adversum, advertĕre, 3. v. a. [ănĭmus, "the mind"; adverto (ăd, "towards"; verto, "to turn"), "to turn towards"] *To perceive, observe.*

ăn-ĭmus, ĭmi, m. *Mind, intellect. Disposition, character. Courage, spirit* [akin to root AN, "to breathe": cp. ἄνεμος: anima].

an-nus, ni, m. *A year* [akin to Sans. root AM, "to go"]

ante, adv. *and* prep.: Ad.: *Before, previously.* Prep. gov. acc.: *Before.*

ant-ĕā, adv. [prob. for anteam; fr. ant-e, "before"; eam, acc. sing. fem. of pron. is "this, that"] *Formerly, previously, once, etc.*

antĕ-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3. v. n. [ante, "before," cēdo, "to go"] *To go on forward, precede.*

antenna, ae, f. *A sailyard* [akin to ἀνατεινω, "to extend"].

antĕ-pōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, pōnĕre, 3. v. a. [ante, "before"; pōno, "to put"] *To put* or *place, before; to take precedence of.*

ăper-tus, ta, tum, adj. [ăpĕrĭo, "to uncover"[*Open, wide, extensive.*

ap-pello, pŭli, pulsum, pellĕre, 3. v. a. [for ad-pello; fr. ăd, "to *or* towards"; pello, "to drive *or* move"] Of a ship: *To bring up to* a spot.

ap-pello, pellāvi, pellātum, pellāre, 1. v. a. *To address, accost.* With second acc. *To call* a person something.

ap-prōpinquo, prŏpinquāvi, prŏpinquātum, prōpinquāre, 1. v. n. [for ad-prōpinquo: fr. ăd, "to"; prōpinquo, "to draw near"] With Dat.: *To draw near to, approach.*

ap-tus, ta, tum, adj. [ăp-īo *or* ăp-o, "to lay hold of"] *Suited, fitted, fit, suitable.*

ăp-ud, prep. gov. acc. [pron. ăp-o, "to lay hold of"] *With amongst.*

ăqu-a, ae, f. *Water* [akin to Sans. *ap*, "water"].

ăquā-tĭo, tĭōnis, f. [see *aqua*] *A fetching of water; a watering.*

ăquĭ-la, lae, f. *An eagle* [akin to Gr. ὠκ-υς, "swift"; Sans. *ásu*, "quickly"].

arbĭtr-or, ātus, sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [arbĭter, arbĭtr-i, "an umpire"] *To hold as true* in one's mind; *to suppose, deem, consider, regard, think.*

arbor, ŏris, f. [root AR, or AL, "high"] *A tree.*

ar-ces-so, sīvī, sītum, sĕre, 3. v. a. [for ar-ced-so; fr. ar=ad, "to,"; cĕd-o, "to go"] *To call, summon, send for.*

ār-īdus, īda, īdum, adj. [ār-ĕo, "to be dry"] *Dry.* As Subst.: ārīdum, i, n. *Dry land.*

ar-ma, mōrum, n. plu. *Arms, weapons.* [root AR, "to fit" cp. armus, articulus, artus: ἄρθρον, ἀριθμός, ἀραρίσκω].

armā-menta, mentōrum, n. plur. [arm(a)-o, "to equip"] *See* arma. Of a ship: *Tackling*, i.e. rigging, sails, cables.

armātus, a, um, P. perf. pass. of armo.—As Subst.: armāti, ōrum, m. plur. *Armed men.*

arm-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [arm-a] *To furnish with arms* or *weapons; to arm.*

art-e, adv. [art-us, "close"] *Closely.*

asci-sco, vi, tum, scĕre, 3. v. a. inch. [asci-o, "to take to one's self knowingly; to admit"] *To take to one's self; to unite, join,* etc.

assŭē-făcĭo, fēci, factum, făcĕre, 3. v. [assue-sco, "to accustom"; facio, "to make" *To make accustomed, accustom, habituate.*

ăt, conj. *But* [akin to Gr. ἀτ-άρ, "but"].

at-que (ac), conj. [for ad-que; fr. ăd, "in condition"; quĕ, "and"] *And also; and.* With comparative adjectives, or words expressing dissimilarity, difference, contrariety: *Than.*

at-tingo, tĭgi, tactum, tingĕre, 3. v. a. [for ad-tango; fr. ăd, "against"; tango, "to touch"] *To touch on, border upon; arrive at, come to,* a place.

at-trĭbŭo, tribŭi, tribūtum tribŭĕre, 3. v. a. [for ad-tribŭo; fr. ad, "to"; tribŭo, "to give"] *To give,* or *assign, to.*

auc-tor, tōris, m. [for augtor; fr. aug-ĕo, "to produce"] *An originator, author.*

auctōr-ĭtas, ātis, f. [auctor] *Weight* of character, *influence, authority.*

audac-ter, adv. [audax, audāc-is, "bold"] *Boldly.*

audĕo, ausus, sum, audēre, 2. v. semidep. *To dare,* or *venture,* to do something.

aud-īo, īvi *or* ĭi, ītum, īre, 4. v. a. ("To give ear to"; hence) *To hear* [akin to αὖς (=οὖς) αὐτός, "ear"].

audī-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [audī-o] ("A hearing"; hence) *Hearsay, rumour.*

augĕo, auxi, auctum, augēre, 2. v. a. *To increase, augment* [akin to αὐξάνω].

aur-īga, īgae, m. [prob. aurĕa, "a head stall"] *A driver, charioteer.*

aut, conj. *Or*: aut . . aut, *either . . or*

aut-em, conj. *But on the other hand. Besides, further, moreover* [akin to αὖτ ap].

auxĭlĭār-es, ium, m. plur. [auxĭlĭār-is "pertaining to help"] *Auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.*

auxĭl-ĭor, ātus sum, āri, 1. v, dep. [auxĭl-ium] *To give aid* or *assistance; to help, assist.*

auxĭl-ium, ĭi, n. prob. fr. obsol. adj. auxil-is (= aug-sil-is fr. aug-ĕo), "increasing"] *Help, aid, assistance, succour*: auxilium ferre, *to bring help* or *succour.* Plur.: *Auxiliary troops* or *forces; auxiliaries.*

ă-vi-s, is, f. *A bird* [akin to Sans. *vi*, "a bird"; a is a prefix].

āvus, i, m. *A grandfather.*

B.

barbărus, i, m. *A barbarian.*

bellĭc-ōsus, ōsa, ōsum, adj. [bellĭc-us, "warlike"] *Very warlike, martial.*

bell-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. [bell-um] *To wage,* or *carry on, war; to war.*

bĕl-lum, i, n. [old form dŭ-ellum; fr. du-o, "two"] *War, warfare.*

bĕn-e, adv. ben-us = bŏnus] *Well, successfully, to advantage, favourably.* Comp.: mĕlius; *Sup.*: optime.

bi-ni, nae, na, num. distributive adj plur. [bi=bis, "twice"] *Two, a pair of.*

bi-pĕd-ālis, āle, adj. [bī (= bis), "twice"; pes, pĕd-is, "a foot," as a measure] *Two feet thick, broad,* or *long.*

bis, num. adv. [for du-is; fr. dŭ-o, "two"] *Twice.*

brĕv-is, e, adj. *Short.* Adverbial Abl., brĕvi, *In a short.*

C.

cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, cădĕre, 3. v. n.: [ro t CAD, "to fall"; cp. casus, κατα] *To fall, fall down. To fall dead, die.*

caedo, cĕcĭdi, caesum, cædĕre, 3. v. a. [cădo, "to fall," in causative force] *To cut, to cut* or *hew down.*

caes-pe-s, pĭtis, m. [prob. for caedpet-s; fr. cae-l-o, "to cut"; pĕt-o, "to seek"] *A turf, sod.*

cālămĭtās, ātis, f. [perhaps for cadamitas: from cado "to fall"]. *Misfortune, calamity.*

call ĭdus, īda, ĭdum, adj. [call-ĕo, "to know by experience"] *Skilful, dexterous. Cunning, crafty.*

campus, i. m. *A plain* [root SKAP, to dig": cp. *σκάπτειν, σκαφή*; scabo].

căpĭo, cēpi, captum, căpĕre, 3. v. a.: *To take*, in the widest sense of the word. Of arms: *To take up*. Of a place: *To reach, arrive at*, esp. by ship. *To take by force of arms, seize*. Of a plan: *To form, to adopt*.

cap-tīvus, tīvi, m. [căp-ĭo, "to take."] *A prisoner, captive*.

cap-tus, tūs, m. [căp-ĭo, "to take with the mind, to comprehend"] *Notion, view*.

căp-ut, ĭtis, n.: [cp. *κεφαλή*: Gothic haubith; German, haupt]. *The head. A person, a man*. Of rivers: *The mouth, embouchure*.

cărīna, ae, f. [KAR, "to be hard": cp. *κάρυον*, "a nut": calx, calculus, carbo] *The keel*, or *bottom*, of a vessel.

carp-o, si, tum, ĕre, 3. v. a. *To find fault with, censure, carp at* [akin to *ἁρπάζω*, "to seize"].

carrus, i. m. A two-wheeled *cart* for heavy loads.

castel-lum, li. n. dim. [for casterlum; fr. castrum, cast(e)ri] *A small fort; a castle, citadel, fortress, stronghold*.

castra, ōrum; see castrum.

cas-trum, tri, n. [probably for skadtrum; akin to root SKAD, "to cover": cp. casa = skadsa; German, schatten; Eng., *shade, shadow*]. Sing.: *A fortified place; a fortress, stronghold*. Plur.: **castra**, ōrum, *a camp* or *encampment*, as containing several soldiers' tents or huts.

cā-sus, sūs, m. [for cad-sus; fr. căd-o, "to fall out, happen"] *Chance, accident. Mishap, misfortune, calamity*.

cătēna, ae, f. *A chain, fetter*.

causa, ae, f. *A cause, reason*. Adverbial Abl.: With Gen. *or* Gerund in di: *For the purpose of; on account of*.

cau-tes, tis, f. *A sharp rock; a crag* [akin to root KO, "to sharpen," *κῶνος*, cos, catus],

cĕl-er, ĕris, ĕre, adj. [CEL, root of cello, "to urge on"] *Swift, rapid, quick*.

cĕlĕr-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [celer, "swift"] *Swiftness, speed, celerity*.

cĕlĕr-iter, adv. [id.] *Swiftly, speedily, quickly*.

centum, num, adj. indecl. *A hundred* [akin to Gr *ἑκατον*].

centŭrĭ-o, ōnis, m. [centŭrĭ-a, "a century" or division of troops in the Roman armies] *A centurion*.

certā-men, mĭnis, n. [cert(a)-o, "to contend"] *A contest*.

cert-e, adv. [cert-us] *Surely, assuredly*.

cer-tus, ta, tum, adj. [fr. CER-, root of cer-no, "to decide"] *Sure, certain*. Phrase: Certior fĭĕri, *(to be made more sure* or *certain*, i.e.) *to be informed*.

c-ētĕri, ētĕrae, ētĕra, adj. plur. (rare in sing.) *The other, the rest; the remaining* or *remainder of*.

cībārĭ-a, ōrum, n, plu. [cībārĭ-us, "pertaining to food"] *Provisions, victuals, food*.

cībus, i, m.; *food*.

circ-ĭter, adv. [circ-us, "a circle"] Of number: *About, near, nearly*.

circŭ-ĕo, īvi *or* ĭi, ĭtum, īre, v. a. irreg. [for circum-ĕo; fr. circum, "round"; ĕo, "to go"] *To go round*.

circum-do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre, 1. v. a. [circum, "around"; do, "to put"] *To surround, inclose*.

circum-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [circum, "round"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead round*.

circumsisto, stĕti, no sup., sistĕre, 3. v. n. [circum, "around"; sisto, "to stand"] *To stand around*.

circum-sto, stĕti, no sup., stāre, 1. v. a. [circum, "around"; sto, "to stand"] Of a vessel: *To surround* in a hostile manner; *to attack, assail*.

circum-vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vĕnīre, 4. v. a. [circum, "around"; vĕnĭo, "to come"] With accessory notion of hostility: *To surround, beset*.

cis, prep. gov. acc. *On this side of*.

cĭtā-tus, ta, tum, adj. [cit(a)-o, "to urge on"] *Rapid, swift, quick*. In adverbial force: *Rapidly, with rapid course*.

cĭt-o, adv. [cĭt-us, "rapid"] *Rapidly, swiftly*: citissime, *with the utmost rapidity*.

cĭ-ter, tra, trum, adj. [for cis-ter; fr. cis, "on this side"] *Being on, or that is, on this side; hither*. Comp.: cĭtĕr-ĭor; (Sup.: cĭ-timus for cis-timus).

citr-a, prep. gov. acc. [cĭter, citr-i, "on this side"] *On this side of*.

cīv-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [civ-is, "a citizen"; root KI, "to dwell" *or* "to lie": *κεῖμαι, κώμη*; qui-es, A. S., *ha-m*; English, *home*]. *A state, commonwealth*.

clam, adv. *Secretly, privately, by stealth* [root KAL, "to cover": cp. *καλυπτω*, "to cover"; cĕl-o, "to hide"].

clāmor, ōris, m. [clām-o, "to cry out"] *Outcry, clamour; a shout*.

classis, is, f. Of persons summoned for the sea service: *A fleet* comprising the ships as well as the men serving in them. [καλᾶσις = κλῆσις, "a calling"].

clau-do, si, sum, dĕre, 3. v. a. *To shut, close* [akin to κλεί-ω, "to shut"].

clāvus [akin to root SKLU, "to shut" *or* "close": cp. claudo, clavis; κλείς, κλείω]. *A peg, nail, spike.*

clī-ens, entis, comm. gen. [for clu-ens, which is also found; fr. clū-o, "to hear"] *A dependant, adherent.*

coep-i (pres. coepio, *etc.*, ante-classical) isse, v. def. a. *and* n. contr. fr. coap-io; fr. co. (=cum) in "intensive" force; ăp-io, to lay hold of] *To begin.*

cōg-ĭto, ātāvi, ātātum, ātāre, 1. v. a. [contr. fr. cŏ-ăgito: fr. co (=cum), in "augmentative" force: ăgito, "to revolve." *etc.*, in the mind] *To revolve thoroughly; to weigh* or *ponder well; to think. To plan, purpose, meditate, etc.*

co-gnosco, gnōvi, gnĭtum, gnoscĕre, 3. v. a. [co (=cum), in "augmentative" force; gnosco (=nosco), "to become acquainted with"] *To become acquainted with, learn, ascertain.* In perf. tenses: *To have knowledge of, to know.*

cōgo, cōēgi, cōactum, cōgĕre, 3. v. a. [contracted fr. co-ăgo; fr. co (=cum), "together"; ăgo, "to drive," *etc.*] *To bring together, collect, assemble.*

cŏhors, tis, f. [Gk. χορτός, "an enclosed space": Latin *hortus*: English, *yard.*] *A cohort*; the tenth part of a Roman legion.

cŏ-hortor, hortātus sum, hortāri, 1 v. dep. [co (=cum), in "strengthening" force; hortor, "to exhort"] *To exhort; to encourage, animate.*

col-lĭgo, lēgi, lectum, llgĕre, 3. v. a. [for con-lĕgo; fr. con (=cum) "together"; lĕgo, "to gather"] *To gather together; to collect, assemble, form in a body.* With Personal pron. plur. in reflexive force: *to collect, or mass, together.*

collis, is, m. [root CEL, "high": cp. celsus, columna; κολώνη] *A hill.*

col-lŏco, lŏcāvi, lŏcātum, lŏcāre, 1. v. a. [for con-lŏco; fr. con (=cum). in "intensive" force; lŏco, "to place"] *To put place, or station* any where. Of affairs, *etc.*: *To put in order, arrange.*

col-lŏquor, lŏquūtus sum, lŏqui, 3. v. dep. [for con-lŏquor; fr. con (=cum), "together"; lŏquor, "to talk"] *To talk together* or *with* a person; *to hold a conference, confer with.*

commĕā-tus, tūs, m. [commĕ(a-o, "to go to and fro"] *Provisions, supplies*

com-mĕmŏro, mĕmŏrāvi, mĕmŏrātum, mĕmŏrāre, 1. v. a. [for commando; [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; mĕmŏro, "to mention"] *To make mention of, recount, relate.*

com-mendo, mendāvi. mendātum, mendāre, 1. v. a. [for commendo; fr. com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; mando, "to commit"] *To commit, or intrust*, for protection.

commĭlĭt-o, ōnis, m. [commĭlĭt-o, "to serve with another as a soldier"] *A fellow soldier, comrade.*

com-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. com (=cum), "together"; mitto, "to cause to go"] Of battle: *To engage in commerce.* With Dat.: *To trust, intrust.*

commŏd-e, adv. [commŏd-us, "advantageous"] *Advantageously, favourably.*

commŏd-um, i, n. [commŏd-us, "advantageous"] *An advantage, interest.*

com-mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum, mŏvēre, 2. v. a. [com (=cum), in "intensive" force; mŏvĕo, "to move"] *To disturb, agitate, disquiet, rouse.*

commūn-ĭco, ĭcāvi, ĭcātum, ĭcāre, 1. v. a. [commūn-is, "common"] *To share, to impart.*

com-mūnis, mūne, adj. [com, "together"; mūnis, "serving"] *Common, joint.*

com-mūto, mūtāvi, mūtātum, mūtāre, 1. v. a. com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; mūto, "to change"] *To change* or *alter* wholly or entirely.

com-păro, pārāvi, pārātum, pārāre, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), "together"; păro, "to bring *or* put"] *To make ready, prepare. To get together, get ready, equip.*

com-pĕr-ĭo, i, tum, īre, 4. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; root PER, akin to per-ĭor, "to pass through"] *To find out accurately; to ascertain, learn.*

com-plĕo, plēvi, plētum, plēre, 2. v. a. [com (=cum). in "augmentative" force; plĕo. "to fill"]. *To fill completely* or *entirely.* Of ditches. *To fill up.*

com-plūres, plūra (and, sometimes, plūrla), adj. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; plūres, "very many"] *Very many, several.* As Subst.: *Very many, several.* As Subst.: *Very many persons* or *men.*

com-porto, portāvi, portātum, portāre, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), "together"; porto, "to carry"] *To carry together; convey, collect.*

com-prĕhendo, prĕhendi, prĕhensum, prĕhendĕre, 3. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; prĕhendo, "to lay hold of"] *To seize, grapple.*

con cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; cēdo, "to yield"] *To grant, allow, yield, concede.* Impers. pass.: Concessum est, *It was conceded. To give* or *yield, up.*

con-cēdo, cĭdi, no sup., cĭdĕre, 3. v. n. [for con-cădo; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; cădo, "to fall"] *To fall,* or *tumble, down.*

con-cīdo, cĭdi, cīsum, cīdĕre, 3. v. a. [for con-caedo; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force: caedo, "to cut"] *To cut up, destroy.*

con-cĭl-ĭum, ii, n. [for con-căl-ĭum; fr. con (=cum), "together"; căl-o, "to call"] *A meeting, assembly, council.*

con-clāmo, clāmāvi, clāmātum, clāmāre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), "together"; clāmo, "to cry out"] *To cry out together; to shout unanimously.*

con-clūdo, clūsi, clūsum, clūdĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; clūdo (=claudo), "to shut" *To shut completely; to close, confine.*

concurro, curri, (rarely cūcurri), currĕre, 3. v. n. [con (=cum, "together"; curro, to run"] *To run together* or *in a body.*

concursus, ūs, m. [con, "together" curro, "to run"] *An attack.*

cond-ĭtĭo, ĭtiōnis, f. [cond-o, "to put together"] *State,* or *condition,* of a person. *An agreement, compact, terms.*

confertus, a, um, adj; *crowded*

confĕro, contŭli, collātum, conferre, v. a. irreg. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; fĕro, "to bear"] *To bear, carry, convey.* With personal pron. in reflexive force: *To betake one's self.*

confestim, adv.; *immediately.*

con-fĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [con-făcĭo; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; facĭo, "to do *or* make"] Of skins: *To prepare. To finish, complete, settle, put an end to. To weaken, disable.*

con-fīdo, fīsus sum, fīdĕre, 3. v. n. *and* a. semi-dep. [con (=cum), in "intensive" force; fīdo, "to trust"] Neut.: with Abl.: *To trust to, rely upon, have confidence in.* Acc.: With Objective clause: *To be persuaded,* or *confident, that.*

con-fīgo, fixi, fixum, figĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), "together"; fīgo, "to fix"] *To join* or *fasten, together.*

confirmā-tĭo, tiōnis, *f.* [confirm(a)-o] *A confirming* or *verifying,* of a matter.

con-firm-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum). in "augmentative" force; firm-us, "strong"] Of an opinion, *etc.*: *To strengthen, establish, confirm.*

coflŭens, tis; [con, "together"; fluo, "to flow"]. Of rivers: *the confluence.*

con-grĕdĭor, gressus sum, -grĕdi, v. dep. [con, "together": grădĭor, "to go"] *To encounter.*

congres-sus, sūs, m. [for congred-sus; fr. congrĕd-ĭor, "to contend"] *A contest, fight, encounter.*

con-jĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for con-jăcĭo; fr. con (=cum): jăcĭo, "to cast"] With in c. acc.: [*To station in a body in* a place] Of weapons: *To hurl, throw, cast.* Of persons: *To throw* into prison: *to put* in fetters. With in fugam: *To rout and put to flight.*

con-jungo, junxi, junctum, jungĕrĕ, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), "together"; jungo, "to join"] *To join together, unite.*

conjūrā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [conjur(a)o] *Confederacy, union, combination.*

con-jūro, jūrāvi, jūrātum, jūrāre, 1. v. n. [con =cum, "together"; jūro, "to swear"] *To enter into a confederacy; to unite, combine.*

cōn-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. *To endeavour, try, attempt.*

con-scendo, scendi, scensum, scendĕre, 3. v. a. [con, "together"; scendo, "to climb"] *To embark.*

con-scisco, scīvi, scītum, sciscĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; scisco, "to decree"] With mortem sibi, (*To decree death to one's self*; i.e.) *To kill* or *destroy one's self.*

con-sector, sectātus sum, sectāri, 1. v. dep. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sector, "to follow after"] *To follow after* or *pursue eagerly,* etc.

con-sĕquor, sĕquūtus sum, sĕqui, 3. v. dep. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sĕquor, "to follow"] In time: *To follow, come after* or *on.* In a hostile sense: *To pursue.*

con-servo, servāvi, servātum, servāre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; servo, "to keep"] *To keep thoroughly, observe strictly* the law.

con-sīdo, sēdi, sessum, sīdĕre, 3. v. n. [con (=cum), "together"; sīdo, "to sit down"] Of troops, *To take one's station; to encamp.*

consĭlĭum, ii, n: *A plan, purpose,*

design. Prudence, discretion. An assembly; a council of war.

con-sisto, stĭti, stĭtum, sistĕre, 3. v. n. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sisto, "to set one's self," i.e. "to stand"] *To take one's stand; to remain, stand still.* Of troops, *etc.*: *To take up a position*, etc.; *to stand.* Of vessels: *To take up a station.* Of hope; With in c. abl.: *To consist in, depend upon.*

conspec-tus, tūs, m. [conspĭc-ĭo; con, "together": specio, "to see"]. *Sight view*: in conspectu, *before the eyes*, or *in the presence*, of some one.

con-spĭcĭo, spexi, spectum, spĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for con-spĕcio; fr. con (=cum), "in" augmentative" force; spĕcĭo, "to see"] *To see, behold, observe.*

con-spīro, spīrāvi, spīrātum, spīrāre, 1. v. n. [con (=cum), "together"; spīro, "to blow"] In a bad sense: *To plot together, enter into a conspiracy, conspire.*

constan-ter, adv. [for constant-ter; fr. constans, constantis, "firm"] *Firmly, steadily, steadfastly.*

con-sterno, strāvi, strātum, sternĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sterno, "to strew"] *To strew over* with something; *to cover* by strewing.

con-stĭtŭo, stĭtŭi, stĭtūtum, stĭtŭĕre, 3. v. a. for con-statuo: fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; statuo, "to place *or* set"] *To appoint, fix.* With Inf.: *To resolve, determine, decide.* With *agree*, or *determine, upon*, something.

con-sto, stĭti, stātum, stāre, 1. v. n. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sto, "to stand"] Of facts, reports: *To be established, certain, clear, evident.* Impers.: **constabat**, *It was evident.*

consŭē-sco, vi, tum, scĕre, 3. v. n. inch. [con-sŭē-o, "to be accustomed"] *To accustom one's self*:—in perf. tenses *to have accustomed one's self*, i.e. *to be accustomed* or *wont.*

consŭē-tūdo, tūdĭnis, f. [for consuet-tūdo, fr. consuēt-us, "accustomed"] *Custom, habit use, usage.*

consul, ŭlis, m. *A consul*; one of the two chief magistrates of the Roman state, chosen annually after the expulsion of the kings.

con-sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, sūmĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "intensive" force; sūmo, "to take"] *To spend* time.

contem-ptĭo, ptiōnis, f. [for contemu-ptio; fr. contemn-o, "to despise"] *A despising; contempt, scorn.*

con-tendo, tendi, tentum, tendĕre, 3. v. a. n. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; tendo, "to stretch"] *To make an effort* or *endeavour; to exert one's self, endeavour.* With accessory notion of hostility: *To strive, contend, struggle*, etc. [tendo, "to bend one's way"] *To bend one's way*, or *proceed, eagerly.*

con-testor, testātus sum, testāri, 1. v. dep. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; testor, "to call to witness"] *To call to witness, invoke* the gods.

con-texo, texŭi, textum, texĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), "together"; texo, "to weave"] *To connect, unite.*

contĭnens, ntis: P. pres. of contĭnĕo. Pa.: *Adjacent, neighbouring, close at hand, contiguous.*

contĭnen-ter, adv. [for contĭnent-ter, fr. contĭnens, continentis, "continuous"] In time: *Continuously, without interruption.*

con-tĭnĕo, tĭnŭi, tentum, tĭnēre, 2. v. a. [for con-tĕnĕo; fr. con (=cum), "together"; tenĕo, "to hold"] *To hold*, or *keep, together.* Of places: In Pass.: *To be surrounded, encompassed*, or *enclosed by. To keep* any where. *To keep*, or *retain* in allegiance.

contĭnŭā-tĭo, tionis, f. [contĭnŭ(a)-o, "to continue"] *Continuation, uninterrupted succession.*

contĭn-ŭus, ŭa, ŭum, adj. [contin-ĕo, "to hold together"] Of time: *Successive, in succession.*

contrā, prep. gov. acc.: Of place: *Over against, opposite. Against, contrary to* expectation.

con-trăho, traxi, tractum, trăhĕre, 3. v. a [con, "together"; trăho, "to draw"] *To draw*, or *bring, together; to collect, assemble.*

contrā-rĭus, rĭa, rĭum, adj. [contra] *Opposite, contrary.* With Dat.: *Over, against, opposite to.*

contŭmēl-ĭa, iae, f. [obsol. adj. contŭmēl-us, "swelling greatly"; fr. con. (=cum), in "augmentative" force; tŭmĕo, "to swell"] *Detriment, injury, damage.*

con-vallis, vallis, f. [con (=cum), "together"; vallis, "a valley"] *A valley enclosed on all sides.*

con-vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vĕnīre. 4. v. n. [con (=cum), "together"] venĭo, "to come" *To come together, assemble.*

con-verto, verti, versum, vertĕre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; verto, "to turn"] *To turn* or *turn round.* Pass. with ad, *To be turned towards*, i.e. *to be directly opposite* or *facing.*

con-vŏco, vōcāvī, vōcātum, vŏcāre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), "together"; vōco, "to call"] *To call together; to convene, convoke.*

co-ŏrĭor, ortus sum, ŏrīri, 3. *and* 4. v. dep. [co (=cum), in "augmentative" force; ŏrĭor, "to rise"] Of war: *To rise, break forth.*

cŏ-p-ĭa, ĭae, f. [contr. fr. co-opia; fr. co (=cum), in "augmentative" force; ops, ŏp-is, "means." *Copiousness, plenty.* Plur.: *Forces, troops.*

cŏ-p-ŭla, ŭlae, f. [contr. fr. co-ap-ula; fr. co (=cum), "together"; ăp-īo, "to join"] *A band, rope. A grapnel.*

cŏrōna, ae, f. [root KUR, "to bend": cp. κύκλος, curvus]. *A garland, wreath,* or *chaplet* of flowers, *etc.*: sub coronā vendere, *to sell* (captives) *as slaves,* as they were crowned, at the sale, like an animal for sacrifice.

corp-us, ŏris, n. [root KAR, "to make": cp. κραίνω; cresco, creo, Ceres] *The body.*

crass-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [crass-us, "thick"] *Thickness.*

crāt-es, ium, f. *Wicker-work, a hurdle.* Plur.: *Fascines.*

crē-do, dĭdi, dĭtum, dĕre, 3. v. a. *To put faith in; to believe; to admit,* or *hold, as true.*

crŭcĭā-tus, tūs. m. [cruci(a)-o, "to torture"] *Torture.*

culp-a, ae, f. ["A deed, action": hence, in a bad sense] *A crime, fault.*

cul-men, mĭnis, n. [see collis] Of a mountain: *The highest point; the peak, summit.*

cum, prep. gov. abl. *With*: written after Personal pronouns: *e.g.* secum [akin to. Gk. ξύν, σύν].

cunctā-tĭo, tiōnis, f [cunct(a)-or] *Delay, hesitation.*

cunc-tor, tātus sum, tāri, 1. v. dep. *To delay, linger, hesitate;* non cunctandum (esse), *that it must not be delayed,* i.e. *that there must be no delay.*

cūnīcŭlus, i.m. ("A rabbit"; hence, from the burrowing of rabbits) Military t. t.: *A mine* [root KO, "to sharpen": cp. cautes].

cŭp-ĭo, īvi *or* ĭi, ītum, ĕre, 3. v. a. *To desire; to be desirous of.*

cur, adv. [contr. fr. quā rē *or* cui rei] *For what reason; why; wherefore.*

cūr-o, āvi ātum āre, 1 v. a. [cūra, "care"] With the Acc. and Gerundive: *To take care, order,* or *cause* that something be done.

curr-us, ūs, m. [curr-o, "to run"] *A chariot, car.*

cur-sus, sūs, m. [for curr-sus; fr. curr-o, "to run"] *A running.*

custōdĭ-a, ae, f. [custōdĭ-o, "to guard"] Of persons keeping guard: *A guard, guarding force.*

D.

dē, prep. gov. abl.: *From, away from. Down from. Out of. With respect to, about, concerning.* Of a reason, *From, for.*

dĕc-em, num. adj. indecl. *Ten* [akin to, Gr. δέκ-α, "ten"].

dē-cerno, crēvi, crētum, cernĕre, 3. v. a. [dē, in "strengthening" force; cerno, "to determine"] *To determine, decree, decide.*

dē-certo, certāvi, certātum, certāre, 1. v. n. [dē, in "strengthening" force; certo, "to contend"] *To contend,* or *fight, vigourously* or *earnestly.*

dēces-sus, sūs. m. [for dēced-sus; fr. dēcēd-o, "to depart"] Of the tide: *The subsiding* or *running out; the ebb.*

dĕc-īmus, īma, īmum, adj. num. adj. [dĕc-em, "ten"] *Tenth.*

dē-clīv-is, e, adj. [de, "down"; clivus, "sloping ground"] Of place: *Sloping, downward.*

Dĕcŭm-ānus (Dĕcĭm-), āna, ānum, adj. [dĕcĭm-a, "the tenth" cohort] *Of the tenth cohort; Decuman*: porta, *the Decuman gate,* the name of the main gate of the four in a Roman camp, given to it from the tenth cohorts of the legions being stationed near it.

dē-curro, cūcurri *or* curri, cursum, currĕre, 3. v. n. [dē, "down"; curro, "to run"] *To run down.*

dē-dĕcus, dĕcŏris, n. [dē, in "negative" force; dĕcus, "that which is becoming"] *Disgrace, dishonour, shame.*

dēd-ĭtĭo, ĭtiōnis, f. [ded-o] *A surrendering, surrender, submission.*

dē-do, dĭdi, dĭtum, dĕre, 3. v. a. [dē, "away from"; do, "to put"] *To give up* to one; *to surrender.* With Personal pron. in reflexive force: *To give one's self up* to another; *to yield, submit. To devote, dedicate,* etc.

dē-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [dē, "away"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead* or *draw off, withdraw.*

dēfătīgā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [dēfătig(a)-o "to weary out"] *Utter weariness* or *fatigue; exhaustion.*

dēfec-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [for dēfactio; fr dēfĭc-io, "to revolt,"] *A revolt.*

de-fendo, fendi, fensum, fendĕre, 3. v. a. [dĕ, "away from"; obsol. fendo, "to beat *or* strike"] *To protect, defend* [fendo is akin to Sans. root HAN, "to strike"].

dēfen-sor, sōris, m. [for defend-sor; fr. defend-o] *A defender.*

dē-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irreg. [dĕ, "down"; fĕro, "to bring"] *To bring,* or *carry, down.*

dēfessus, a, um, P. perf. of dēfĕtiscor. As. Subst.: **defessus**, i. m. *One wearied out* or *exhausted.*

dē-fĕtiscor, fessus sum, fĕtisci, 3. v. dep. inch. [for dēfatiscor; fr. dĕ, in "strengthening" force; fātiscor, "to grow faint"] *To become quite faint* or *weary*: In perf, tenses: *to be quite faint* or *weary*; *to be wearied out* or *exhausted.*

dē-fĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. n. [for de-făcio; fr. dĕ, "away from"; făcio, "to make"] *To withdraw from allegiance*; *to revolt. To fail, fall short, be wanting.*

dē-fīgo, fixi, fixum, fīgĕre, 3. v. a. [dĕ, "down"; fīgo, "to fix"] *To fix, fasten,* or *drive down.*

dē-form-is, e, adj. [dĕ, denoting "separation"; form-a, "shape"] *Misshapen, ill-shaped.*

dē-jĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for dējăcio; fr. de, "down"; jăcio, "to throw"] *To throw* or *cast down. To drive down, dislodge. To overthrow, destroy.*

deinceps, adv. [adverbial neut. of deinceps, "following"] Of time: *Successively, in succession.*

dē-inde, adv. [de, "from"; inde, "thence"] In time: *Thereafter, afterwards, after this, then.*

dēlec-to, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a intens. [for dēlac-to; fr. delic-io (through root LAC), "to allure away"; hence] *To delight, please.*

dē-lĭbĕro, lĭbĕrāvi, lĭbĕrātum, lĭbĕrāre, 1. v. a. [for dĕ-libro; fr. de, in "strengthening" force; libro, "to poise *or* weigh"] *To weigh well* in one's mind; *to ponder, consider, deliberate.*

dē-lĭgo, lēgi, lectum, lĭgĕre, 3. v. a. [for dĕ-lego; fr. dĕ, out *or* out from"; lĕgo, "to choose"] *To choose out* from a number; *to select.*

dē-lĭgo, lĭgāvi, lĭgātum, lĭgāre, 1. v. a. [dĕ, "down"; lĭgo, "to bind"] *To bind down, to bind fast, fasten.*

dē-lītesco, lĭtŭi, no sup., lītescĕre, 3. v. n. [for dĕ lātesco; fr. dĕ, "away"; lātesco, "to hide one's self"] *To hide one's self away; to conceal one's self.*

dēment-ĭa, lae, f. [dēmens, dēmentis, "out of one's mind, mad"] *Madness, senselessness, folly.*

de-mĕto, messŭi, messum, mĕtĕre, 3. v. a. [dĕ, "down"; meto, "to mow *or* reap"] *To mow, reap,* or *cut down.*

dē-mīgro, mīgrāvi, mīgrātum, mīgrāre, 1. v. n. [dĕ, "away"; mīgro, "to migrate"] *To migrate away* from a place; *to remove, depart, emigrate.*

dē-monstro, monstrāvi, monstrātum, monstrāre, 1. v. a. [dĕ, in "augmentative" force: monstro, "to show"] *To show, point out.* Impers.: demonstratum est, *it has been shown.*

dē-mŏror, mōrātus sum, mōrāri, 1. v. dep. [dĕ, in "strengthening" force, mŏror, "to delay"] *To delay, hinder.*

densus, a, um, adj. [akin δασύς: denseo, dumus] *Thick, close, dense.*

dē-pello, pŭli, pulsum, pellĕre, 3. v. a. [dĕ, "away"; pello, "to drive"] *To drive away.*

dē-perdo, perdĭdi, perditum, perdĕre, 3. v. a. [dĕ, denoting "completeness"; perdo, "to lose"] *To lose entirely* or *completely.*

dē-pōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, pōnĕre, 3. v. a. [de, "down"; pōno, "to put"] *To put* or *lay down* in a place; *to deposit*: deponere in silvas, *to convey into the woods and deposit there. To lay aside.*

de-porto, portāvi, portātum, portāre, 1. v. a. [dĕ, "away"; porto, "to carry"] *To carry away.*

dē-prĕcor, prĕcātus sum, prĕcāri, 1, v. dep. [dĕ, "away from"; prĕcor, "to pray"] *To avert* or *ward off,* by prayer or entreaty; *to deprecate.*

dē-rĕlinquo, rĕlĭqui, rĕlictum, rĕlinquĕre, 3. v. a. [dĕ, denoting "completeness"; rĕlinquo, "to leave" *To leave completely* or *altogether; to abandon, forsake, desert.*

dē-sīd-ĕro, ĕrāvi, ĕrātum, ĕrāre 1. v. a. *To long for, earnestly wish for, desire. To miss* a thing [de, in "intensive" force; root SID, akin to Gr. ἰδ-εῖν, "to see *or* look at"].

dē-sĭlĭo, sĭlŭi, sultum, sĭlīre, 5. v. n. [for de-sălio; fr. dĕ, "down"; salio, "to leap"] *To leap down.*

dē-sisto, stĭti, stĭtum, sistĕre, 3. v. n. [dĕ, "away from"; sisto, "to set one's self, stand"] *To leave off, give over, cease, desist.*

despec-tus, tūs, m. [despĭcio, "to look down upon"] *A view* or *prospect* from a higher ground.

dē-spēro, spērāvi, spērātum, spērāre, 1. v. n. dē, denoting "reversal"; spēro, "to hope"] *To give up*, or *lose, hope*; *to despair.*

de-spĭcĭo, spexi, spectum, spĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for de-spĕcio; fr. dē, "down upon": spĕcio, "to look"] *To despise.*

dē-stĭ-no, nāvi, nātum, nāre, 1. v. a. [for de-sta-no; fr. dē, in "strengthening" force; STA, root of sto, "to stand"] *To make fast, fasten, bind.*

dē-sum, fŭi, esse, v. n. [dē, "away from"; sum, "to be"] *To fail* or *be wanting.*

dē-tĭneo, tĭnŭi, tentum, tĭnēre, 2. v. a. [for de-tĕneo; fr. dē, "off *or* away from"; tĕneo, "to hold"] *To hold*, or *keep, back, to detain.*

dē-trăho, traxi, tractum, trāhĕre, 3. v. a. [de, "away"; trăho, "to draw"] *To withdraw.*

dĕus, i (Nom. Plu., dii, ch. 7. m. *A god, deity* [akin to Gr. θεός, "a god"].

dēvōt-us, i, m. [dēvōt-us, "devoted, attached"] *A devoted, attached*, or *faithful adherent* or *retainer.*

dīco, dixi, dictum, dīcĕre, 3. v. a. [pic, "to show": cp. δείκνυμι, δίκη; indico, index] *To speak, say, mention report.* Pass.: *To be said, mentioned, reported.* Impers.: dicĕbatur, *it was said or reported*; dictum est, *mention has been made.*

dī-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [di (=dis), "apart"; dūco, "to lead"] Of troops: *To separate, divide.*

dĭes, ēi, m. (in sing. sometimes f.) *A day*: diebus paucis, *in a few days* [root DIV, "bright": cp. divus, δῖος; O. H. G. *Zio*].

difficul-tas, tātis, f. [difficul, is, old form of difficil-is, "difficult"] *Difficulty.*

dif-flŭo, no perf. nor sup., flŭĕre, 3. v. n. [for dis-flŭo; fr. dis, "in different directions", flŭo, "to flow"] *To flow in different directions.*

dĭg-ĭtus, ĭti, m. [see dico] *A finger* (see pollex).

dign-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [dign-us, "worthy"] *Dignity.*

dĭlĭgen-ter, adv. [for dilĭgent-ter; fr. diligens, diligent-is, "diligent"] *Diligently, carefully.* Comp.: diligent-ĭus.

dĭlĭgent-ĭa, iae, f. [diligens, diligent-is; see diligenter] *Diligence, carefulness, caution, attention.*

dimensus, a, um. P. perf. of dimetior:—at ch. 17 in Pass. force: *Measured out, proportioned.*

dī-mĕtĭor, mensus sum, mētīri, 4. v. dep. [di (=dis), "apart"; mĕtior, "to measure"] *To measure out, to proportion.*

dī-mĭco, micāvi *or* mĭcŭi, mĭcātum, 1. v. n. [di (=dis), "greatly"; mĭco, "to move to and fro"] *To fight, combat.*

dis-jĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. for dis-jăcio; fr. dis, "asunder"; jăcio, "to throw"] *To disperse, separate, scatter.*

dī-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [di (=dis), "apart"; mitto, "to send"] *To send about, in different directions*, or *to different parts. To send away; to let go, dismiss.*

dīrec-tus, ta, tum, adj.: P. perf. pass. of dirigo. Pa.: *Straight, direct, level.*

dī-rĭgo, rexi, rectum, rĭgĕre, 3. v. a. [for dī-rĕgo; fr. dī (=dis), in "strengthening" force; rĕgo, "to keep, *or* lead, straight"] *To keep, put*, or *place straight*, or *in a straight line.*

dis-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3. v. n. [dis, "apart"; cēdo, "to go"] *To go away, depart.*

disces-sus, sūs, m. [for disced-sus; fr. discēd-o, "to depart"] *Departure.*

discĭpl-īna, inae, f. [for discipulina; fr. discipŭl-us, "a learner"] *Discipline.*

dis-clūdo, clūsi, clūsum, clūdĕre, 3. v. a. [dis, "apart"; clūdo (=claudo), "to shut"] *To keep apart* or *asunder*

dī-spergo, spersi, spersum, spergĕre, 3. v. a. [for dispargo; fr. di (=dis), "in different directions"; spargo, "to scatter"] *To scatter in different directions*; *to disperse.*

dissĭmŭ-lo, lavi, lātum, lāre, 1. v. a. [for dissimil-o; fr. dissimil-is, "unlike"] *To feign*, that a thing is not that which it is; *to dissemble, disguise, conceal.*

dis-tĭnĕo, tĭnŭi, tentum, tĭnēre, 2. v. a. [for dis-tĕneo; fr. dis, "apart"; tĕneo, "to hold"] *To hold*, or *keep, apart.*

di-sto, no perf. nor sup., stāre, 1. v. n. [di (=dis), "apart"; sto, "to stand"; *To stand*, or *be, apart*; *to be separate.*

dis-trĭbŭo, tribŭi, trĭbūtum, trĭbŭĕre, 3. v. a. [dis, "amongst several"; trĭbŭo, "to give"] *To divide out, distribute, assign.*

dĭu, adv. [Adverbial Abl. of obsol., dius (=dies), "a day"] ("By day"; hence) *For a long time*; *a long while.* Comp.: *Longer.*

dĭūturn-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [dĭūturn-us, "of long duration"] *Long duration* or *continuance*; *length.*

dī-vĭdo, vīsi, vīsum, vĭdĕre, 3. v. a. ("To part asunder"; hence) *To divide, separate*, etc. Pass.: di (=dis), "apart";

root VID, "to separate": cp. viduus vidua: Eng. *widow*].

dō, dĕdi, dătum, dăre, 1. v. a. *To give*, in the fullest sense of the word; *to grant. To put, place cast* somewhere: dare in fugam, *to put to flight*,

dŏc-ĕo, ŭi, tum, ēre, 2. v. a. [akin to duc-o *To teach, instruct, inform, show, tell*, etc.

dŏl-ĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2. v. a. Mentally: With objective clause: *To grieve, deplore, lament.*

dŏl-us, i, m. *Craft, fraud, guile, deceit* [δόλος].

dŏmi, dŏmum; see domus.

dŏmus, i, *and* ūs, f. [root DOM, "to build": cp. δέμω, δόμος; Goth., *timrjan*; O.H.G., *zimmer*; Saxon, *timber*] *A dwelling-house, abode.* Adverbial. Gen. of place: dŏmi, *At home.* Abl. of place "whence": domo, *From home.* After verbs of motion, dŏmum, *To the house, home, homewards* [Gr. δόμος].

dŭ-cent-i, ae, a, num, adj. [dŭ-o, "two"; cent-um, "a hundred"] *Two hundred.*

dūc-o, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. *To lead, conduct. To think, consider.*

dum, conj. [akin to diu] *While, whilst, during the time that. Until.*

dŭo, ae, v. (Gen. plur. duŭm), num. adj. *Two* [Gr. δυο].

dŭŏ-dĕcim, num. adj. [for dŭŏ-dĕcem; fr. dŭo, "two"; dĕcem, "ten"; *Twelve.*

dŭŏ-dĕcĭm-us, a. um, num. ord. adj. [dŭŏdĕcim] *Twelfth.*

dŭ-plex, plĭcis, adj. [for duplic-s; fr. dŭo, "two"; plico, "to fold"] *Two-fold, double.*

dŭplĭc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [duplex, duplic-is, "double"] *To double.*

duum; see duo.

dux, dūcis, comm. gen. [for duc-s; fr. dūc-o, "to lead"] *A leader, commander.*

E.

ēd-ĭtus, ĭta, ĭtum, adj. [ĕd-o, "to put, *or* set, forth"] *High, lofty, elevated.*

ē-dŏcĕo, dŏcŭi, doctum, dŏcēre, 2. v. a. [e (=ex), "thoroughly"; docco, "to teach"] *To teach,* or *show, thoroughly; to inform, apprize.*

e; see ex.

ē-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [e (=ex), "out"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead out* or *forth.*

ef-fēmĭn-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for ex-femin-o; fr. ex, denoting "change"; fēmin-a, "a woman"] *To render effeminate, enervate.*

ef-fĭcĭo. fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for ex-făcĭo; fr. ex, "out"; făcio, "to make"] *To effect, accomplish, bring about, make, complete. To produce.*

ef-fŭgĭo, fūgi, fŭgĭtum, fŭgĕre, 3. v. a. [for ex-fŭgio; fr. ex, "out"; fŭgio, "to flee"] *To flee out* or *away; to escape.*

ĕgo, Gen, mĕi (plur. nos), pers. pron. *I* [akin to Gr. ἐγώ].

ē-grĕdĭor, gressus sum, grĕdi, 3. v. dep. [for ē-grădĭor; fr. ē (=ex), "out"; grădior, "to step"] *To disembark* from a vessel; *to land.*

ē-jĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3 v. a. [for ē-jăcĭo; fr. e (=ex), "out"; jăcio, "to cast"] *To cast* or *throw out*: ējĭcĕre se, *to rush out, sally forth. To eject, expel.*

ējusmŏdi: *of such a kind.*

ēnim, conj. *For.*

ĕo, īvi *or* ĭi, ĭtum, īre, v. n. *To go* [akin to Sans. root i, "to go"].

ĕo, adv. [prob. for eom (=eum), old acc. sing. masc. of pron. is, "this, that" Of place: *To that place, thither, there. For this reason, on the following account.*

ĕŏdem, adv. [for eomdem=eumdem; fr. ĭdem, "the same"] *To the same place.*

ĕphippĭ-ātus, āta, ātum, adj. [ephippium] *Having horse-cloths,* or *housings.*

ĕphippĭum, ĭi, n. *A horse-cloth, housings* [Gr. ἐφίππιον],

ĕpistŏla, ae, f. *A letter, epistle* [ἐπιστολή, "that which is sent to" one].

ĕqu-ĕs, ĭtis, m. [for equ-i-(t)s; fr. ĕqu-us; i, root of eo, "to go"] *A horseman.* Plur.: *Cavalry.*

ĕqu-ester, tris, estre, adj. [equus, "a horse"] *Pertaining to a horse, horse-, cavalry-.*

ĕquĭtā-tus, tūs, m. [ĕquĭt(a)-o, "to be an *eques* or horseman; to ride"] *Cavalry, horse soldiers.*

ĕqu-us, i, m. *A horse* [root AC, "swift": cp. acer].

ērect-us, ta, tum, adj. [for ereg-tus; fr. erigo, "to raise up"] *High, lofty.*

ē-rĭpĭo, ripŭi, reptum, rĭpĕre, 3. v. a. [for ē-răpio; e (=ex), "away"; rapio, "to snatch"] *To snatch, tear,* or *wrest away. To rescue.*

ē-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, rumpĕre, 3. v. n. [e (=ex), "out"; rumpo, "to

break"] *To break* out from a place; *to rush*, or *sally, forth*: *to make a sortie* or *sally.*

ē-ruptĭo, tiōnis, f. [erumpo] *A sortie, sally.*

essĕd-ārĭus, ārii, m. [essedum] *A chariot-warrior.*

essĕdum, i. n. *A war-chariot* of the ancient Gauls and Britons [Celtic word, cf. Gr. ἅρμα, "a chariot"].

et, conj. *And*: et...et, *both...and* [akin to Gr. ἔτι, "moreover"]

ētĭam, conj. [akin to et] *And too, and furthermore; likewise, also, besides. Even.*

et-si, conj. [et, "even"; si, "if"] *Even if, although.*

ē-vādo, vāsi, vāsum, vādĕre, 3. v. n. [ē (=ex), "out"; vādo, "to go"] *To get off, escape.*

ē-vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vēnīre, 4. v. n. [ē (=ex), "out"; vēnĭo, "to come"] *To turn out, issue, happen.*

ēven-tus, tūs, m. [ēvēn-īo, "to turn out, issue"] *Occurrence, (event*: ex eventu suarum navium, *from the occurrence of his ships*, i.e.) *from what had happened to*, or *befall-n, his ships.*

ēvŏco, vōcāvi, vōcātum, vōcāre. 1. v. a. [ē (=ex), "out"; vōco, "to call"] *To call out* or *forth*: *to summon.*

ē-vŏlo, vōlāvi, volātum, vŏlāre, 1. v. n.: [v. "out," volo, "to fly"]. *To sally forth, to rush out.*

ex, (ē), prep. gov. abl.: Of place: *Out of, away from. From. In conformity with, according to. In consequence of, on account of.* In specifying a multitude from which a thing, *etc.*, is taken, or of which it forms a part: *Out of, of.*

ex-ăgĭto, ăgĭtāvi, ăgĭtātum, ăgĭtāre, 1. v. a. [ex, "without force"; ăgĭto, "to disturb, chase"] *To harass.*

ex-ănĭm-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a [ex, implying "negation"; ănim-a, "life"] *To deprive of strength, weaken, exhaust.*

ex-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3. v. n. [ex, "out *or* forth"; cēdo, "to go"] *To go forth*, or *away*; *to withdraw, depart.*

ex-cĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, cĭpĕre. 3. v. a. [for ex-căpĭo; fr. ex, "without force"; căpĭo, "to take"] *To take, take up, collect, ather. To sustain, support, bear.*

excĭ-to, tāvi, tātum, tāre. 1. v. a. intens. [excĭ-o, "to call forth" *To erect, construct, build. To excite, rouse, spur on.*

ex-cūs-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for ex-caus-o; fr. ex, "from"; causa, "a charge"] *To excuse.*

exercĭtā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [exercĭt(a)-o, "to exercise"] *Exercise, practice.*

exerc-ĭtus, ĭtūs, m. [exercĕo, "to exercise"] *An army*, as a trained and disciplined body of men.

ex-ĭgo, ēgi, actum, ĭgĕre, 3. v. a. [for ex-ăgo; fr. ex, "out"; ăgo, "to lead"] Of time: *To pass, spend*

exĭgŭ-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [exiguus, "small"] *Smallness, small size.*

exĭgŭus, ŭa, ŭum, adj. *Small, little.*

ex-istĭmo, istĭmāvi, istĭmātum, istĭmāre, 1. v. a. [for ex-aestimo; fr. ex, "without force"; aestĭmo, "to think"] *To think, imagine, deem, suppose.*

exĭ-tus, tūs. m. [exĕo, "to go out": from ex, "out of"; ĕo, "to go"] Of circumstances, *etc.*: *An issue, result, conclusion.*

ex-pĕd-ĭo, īvi *or* ĭi, ītum, īre, 4. v. a. [ex, "out of"; pes, pĕd-is, "the foot". *To extricate, disengage.*

expĕdītus, a, um. P. perf. pass. of expedĭo. Pa.: *Unencumbered; free* from any thing hindering ready action. *Ready, easy.*

ex-pello, pŭli, pulsum, pellĕre, 3. v. a. [ex, "out"; pello, "to drive"] *To drive out, expel.*

ex-perĭor, pertus sum, pīrĭri, 4. v. dep. [ex, "thoroughly"; obsol. pĕrior, "to go *or* pass through"; hence, "to try"] *To try, prove, put to the test. To make trial of, have recourse to.*

ex plōrātor, tōris, m. [explōra)-o, "to spy out"] *A spy, scout.*

ex-plōro, plōrāvi, plōrātum, plōrāre, 1. v. a. ex, in "augmentative" force; plōro, "to cry out"] *To search out, discover, ascertain.*

ex-pōno, pōsŭi, pōsĭtum, pōnĕre, 3. v. a. [ex, "out"; pōno, "to put"] Naut. t. t.: *To set on shore*; *to land, disembark* a person. Of troops: *To display to view*; *to draw up, post.*

ex-porto, portāvi, portātum, portāre, 1. v. a. [ex, "out"; porto, "to carry"] *To carry out or away.*

ex-pugno, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre, 1. v. a. [ex, "thoroughly"; pugno, "to fight"] *To take by assault*; *to storm, capture.*

ex-quīro, quīsīvi, quīsītum, quīrĕre, 3. v. a. [for ex-quaero; fr. ex, "very much"; quaero, "to seek for"] *To search out, ascertain.*

ex-sisto, stĭti, stĭtum, sistĕre, 3. v. n. [ex, out *or* forth"; sisto, "to stand"] Of a calm: *To arise, prevail, be.*

ex-specto. spectāvi, spectātum,

spectāre, 1. v. a. [ex, "very much"; specto, "to look out"] *To wait for, await, wait to see; to wait* until.

ex-strŭo, (-trŭo), struxi, structum, struĕre, 3. v. a. [ex, "thoroughly"; strŭo, "to heap up"] *To build up, raise, rear.*

ex-tĭmesco, tĭmŭi, no sup., tĭmescĕre, 3. v. a. inch. [ex, "greatly"; timesco (obsolete as finite verb): Occurring only in pres. part.] *To fear greatly; to dread.*

ex-trūdo, trūsi, trūsum, trūdĕre, 3. v. a. [ex, "out"; trūdo, "to thrust"] *To force out, exclude.*

extrēmum, i; see extrēmus.

extrēmus, a, um, sup. adj.: Of position: *Outermost, extreme. Last,* in the widest sense of the word. As Subst.: extrēmum, i, n. *The end, close termination.*

exŭo, ŭi, ūtum, ŭĕre, 3. v. a. With Abl.: *To strip,* or *despoil, of.*

F.

făcĭl-e, adv. [facil-is] *Easily, with ease.*

făc-ĭlis, ĭle, adj. [făc-io, "to do"] *Easy, devoid of difficulty.*

făcĭlĭus; see făcile.

făc-ĭnus, ĭnŏris, n. [făc-io, "to do" *Misdeed, crime.*

făcĭo, fēci, factum, făcĕre, 3. v. a. [root FU, "to be." in causative sense: cp. *fui,* —bam imper. indic. Gk. φυω.] *To make,* in the widest acceptation of the term: proelium facere, (*to make,* i.e.) *to engage in a battle*; so, proelio facto, *when the engagement had taken place,* opportunitatem sibi facere, (*to make to them,* i. e.) *to grant* or *afford them the opportunity,* facere iter, (*to make a march,* i. e.) *to march. To build, construct. To do.*—Pass.: fĭo, factus sum, fĭĕri; see fio.

factu, Supine in u fr. facio.

factum, ti. n. [făc-io, "to do"] *A deed, action.*

făcul-tas, tātis, f. [obso. făcul=făcilis] *Power, means, opportunity.*

fal-lo, fĕfelli, falsum, fallĕre, 3. v. a. *To deceive* [akin to Gr. σφαλ-λω, "to tremble"—in causative force.

falx, falcis, f. *A pruning-hook*; *a scythe.* A military implement in the form of a *hook* or *scythe* used in sieges for pulling down walls; called also falx mūrālis.

fastīgo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a.: *To make pointed, to sharpen* or *bring to a point.* P. perf. pass.: *Sloped down sloping.*

fēlīc-ĭter, adv. [felix, fēlīc-is, "prosperous"] *Prosperously.*

fĕre, adv. *Nearly, almost, for the most part, about.*

ferme, adv. *Nearly, almost.*

fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irreg.: [root, FER, "to bear": cp. φέρω, φέρνη, φόρος; ferax, fertilis, fortis, fortuna; Goth., bar, baira; A. S., bere; Scottish, bere=barley. The root TUL or TOL, appears in τλάω, τάλαντον: tollo, tolero; Gothic, thula; O.H.G. dolens; Scottish, thole.] *To bear, bring, carry*: arma ferre, *to carry arms,* i. e. *to be soldiers,* ch. 19. Of a river: Pass. in reflexive force: *To rush onwards.* Of terms: *To offer, propose.* Of abstract things as subjects: Without object: *To allow., permit*: quam consuetudo ferret, (*than customary allowed,* i.e.) *than was customary* or *usual,* ch. 32.

ferr-ĕus, ĕa, ĕum, adj. [ferrum, "iron"] ("Of, *or* belonging to, *ferrum*"; hence) *Made of iron, iron.*

fĕr-us, a, um, adj. ("Wild" hence) *Fierce, savage* [akin to θήρ, Æolic φήρ, "a wild animal"].

fī-bŭla, bulae, f. [for fig-bula, fr. fig-o, "to fasten"]. In carpentry: *A brace.*

fictus, a, um, P. perf. pass. of fingo.—As Subst.: ficta, ōrum, n. plur. *Feigned* or *fictitious things,* ch. 5.

fīd-ēlis, ēle, adj. [fīd-es, "faith"] *Faithful*; sometimes with Dat.

fīdes, ēi, f. [fīd-o, "to put faith *or* confidence" in] *Faith, good faith. Faithfulness. fidelity. Promise engagement, plighted word*: fidem jurejurando facere, (*to make an engagement by,* or *under, an oath*; i.e.) *to bind* one's self *by oath. Guardian, care, protection.*

fig-ūra, ūrae, f. [FIG, root of fingo, "to form"] *Form. shape.*

fīlĭus, i, m.: [root FU, in fui, φυω. "to beget."] *A son.*

fingo, finxi, fictum, fingĕre, 3. v. a.: *To form, make. To feign.*—Pass.: fingor, fictus sum, fingi [prob. akin to θιγ, root of θιγ-γάνω, "to touch").

fīn-īo, īvi *or* ĭi, ītum, īre, 4. v. a. [fīnis] *To bound, limit. To end, terminate, finish.*

fī-nis, nis, m. [probably for fid-nis, fr. findo, "to divide," through root FID] Plur.: *Borders* of a country; and so, *territory, land, country* included within certain borders.

fīn-ītĭmus, ītĭma, ītĭmum, adj. [fin-is] *Bordering upon, adjoining, neighbouring.*

fĭo, factus sum, fĭĕri, v. pass. irreg.: see facio: *To be made. To become. To happen* or *come to pass; to be brought about.*

firm-iter, adv. [firm-us, "firm"] *Firmly*: firmiter insistere, *to stand firmly.* i.e. *to get a firm footing.*

firm-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [firmus, strong"] *Strength.*

fir-mus, ma, mum, adj. *Strong, firm* [for fer-mus, fr. fĕr-o].

fistūca, ae, f. *A rammer, beetle*; atch. 17, the fistucae mentioned were probably machines, worked by ropes and pulleys, by which heavy weights were raised to a considerable height and then made to fall heavily on the piles beneath.

flecto, flexi, flexum, flectĕre, 3. v. a. *To turn, bend* [akin to πλέκ-ω, "to plait *or* twist"].

flōrens, ntis: P. pres. of floreo. Pa.: *Flourishing, prosperous.*

flōr-ĕo, ŭi, no sup., ēre, 2. v. n. [flos, flor-is, "a flower"] *To be in a flourishing* or *prosperous condition; to flourish; to be eminent, distinguished,* or *conspicuous.*

fluc-tus, tūs, m. [for flugvtus, fr. FLUGV, root of fiŭo, "to flow"] *A wave, billow.*

flū-men, mĭnis, n. [flū-o] *A river.*

fŏr-is, is, f. *A door*; mostly plur., *doors* [akin to θύρ-α].

for-ma, mae, f. [for fer-ma; fr. fĕr-o, "to bear"] *Form, shape.*

for-s, tis (only in Nom. and Abl. Sing.), f. [probably for fertis; fr. fĕro] *Chance, hazard, accident.* In. Abl.: *By chance, accidentally, by accident.*

fŏre, inf. fut. of sum.

for-tis, te, adj. *Brave, bold, courageous* [for fertis. fr. fĕr-o; and so, "bearing, that bears"; hence, "strong"; hence, as a result, "brave."]

fort-iter, adv. [fort-is] *Courageously, with courage, bravely.*

fort-ūna, ūnae, f. [fors, fortis] *Chance, hap, luck, fortune. Good luck, good fortune, prosperity. Ill-luck, misfortune,* Plur.: *Property, possessions, goods, fortune.*

fos-sa, [for fod-sa; fr. fŏd-io, "to dig"] *A ditch, trench, fosse.*

frango, frēgi, fractum, frangĕre, 3. v. a. Of a ship: *To shatter, wreck, dash to pieces* [akin to Gr. ῥήγνυμι].

frāter, tris, m. *A brother.*

frĕm-ĭtus, ĭtūs, m. [frĕm-o, "to roar"] *A roaring, roar.*

frĕquens, ntis, adj. Of persons: *Assembled in great numbers, numerous, crowding together.*

frĕ-tus, ta tum, adj. With Abl.: *Relying or depending upon; trusting to.*

frīg ĭdus, ĭda, ĭdum, adj. [frīg-ĕo, "to be cold"] *Cold.*

frons, tis; n. f.: *front*; a fronte, *from the front.*

frūment-ārĭus, ārĭa, ārĭum, adj. [frument-um] *Pertaining to corn*: res frūmentārĭa, *corn, provisions.*

frūmentātum, Supine in um fr. frumentor.

frūment-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [frument-um] *To get corn, forage.*

frū-mentum, menti, n. [frŭor. "to eat"] *Corn, grain*; plur.: *Corn,* i.e. *crops.*

frŭor, fructus *and* frŭĭtus sum, frŭi, 3. v. dep. With Abl.: *To enjoy* [root FRU or FRUG, akin to Sans. root BHUJ, "to eat," also "to enjoy"].

frustrā, adv. [akin to fraudo] ("In a deceived manner"; hence) *In vain, to no purpose*: non frustra, (*not in vain,* i.e.) *effectually, with effect.*

fŭg-a, ae, f. [fŭg-io, "to flee"] *Flight,* in fugam conjicere, *to put to flight, rout.*

fŭgĭo, fūgi, fŭgĭtum, fŭgĕre, 3. v. n. *To flee, flee away, take to flight* [akin to φυγ, root of φεύγω, "to flee."

funda, ae, f. *A sling* [Gr. σφενδ-όνη].

fundĭtor, ōris, m. *A slinger.*

fundo, fūdi, fūsum, fundĕre, 3. v. a. ("To pour out"; hence) Milit. t. t.: *To rout or overthrow.* Pass.: fundor, fūsus sum, fundi [akin to χέ-ω, "to pour out"; χύ-σις, "a pouring out"].

fūn-is, is, m. *A cord, rope; a cable.*

G.

gaesum, i, n. A long heavy *javelin* used by the Gauls [said to be a Keltic word].

gaudĕo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre, 2. v. semi-dep. *To rejoice* or *be glad* [root GAV, "to rejoice," akin to Gr. γηθέω, "to rejoice"].

gen-s, tis, f. [gĕn-o, "to beget": cp. γένος, γίγνομαι] *A race* of persons. *A nation.*

gĕnus, ĕris, n. *A race, stock, family.* Of things: *Kind, sort*: [see gens].

gero, gessi, gestum, gĕrĕre, 3. v. a. *To do, perform, carry on.* Of war: *To wage.*

glădĭus, i, m. *A sword.*

glōr-ĭa, iae, *f.* [=clu-oria, from KLU, "to hear": cp. κλύω, κλέος] *Glory, renown, fame.*

grāt-ĭa, iae, f. [grāt-us, in etymological force of "provided, *or* gifted, with favour"] *Favour, regard, esteem, friendship.*

grăv-is, e, adj. *Heavy.* Of age: *Advanced* [akin to Gr. βαρ-ύς].

grăv-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [grăv-is, "weighty, important"] *Weight, importance.*

grăv-ĭter, adv. [gravis, "serious"] *Seriously, severely.*

gūbernā-tor, tōris, m. [gubern(a)-o, "to steer"] *A steersman, pilot.*

H.

hăb-ĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2. v. a. *To have,* in the widest acceptation of the term. With double Acc.: *To have* one *as* something.

hĭbern-a, ōrum, n. plur. [hibern-us "winter"] With ellipse of castra, which is occasionally expressed: *Winter-camp, winter-quarters.*

hīc, haec, hoc (Gen. hūjus; Dat. huic), pron. dem. *This* person *or* thing. As Subst. Sing.: hīc, m. *This man, he.* hoc, m. *This thing, this.* Plur.: hi, m. *These persons* or *men.* haec, n, *These things.* Hoc, adverbial Abl.: *On this account, for this reason* [akin to pronominal root I, aspirated with o (=ce), demonstrative suffix].

hĭĕm-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. [hiems, hīm-is] *To winter: to have,* or *take up, winter-quarters.*

hĭem-s, is, f. *Winter,* [akin to Sans. *him-a,* "snow"; Gr. χειμών, "winter"; χεῖμα, "winter weather"].

hŏmo, inis, comm. gen. *A person* or *man,* generally. Plur.: *Persons, men.*

hōra, ae. f. *An hour* [ὥρα].

hor-tor, tātus sum, tāri, 1. v. dep. [*To strongly urge; to exhort, address,* etc.] *To encourage* by exhortations [perhaps akin to ὀρ-νυμι, "to rouse"].

hos-tis, tis, comm. gen. *An enemy,* or *foe,* of one's country [prob. akin to Sans. root GHAS, "to eat"; O. H. G., *kast*; H.G., *gast*; English, *guest*].

hūc, adv. [for hoc, adverbial neut. acc. of hic, "this"] *To this place, hither.*

hujusmŏdi: Often written hujus modi. *Of such a sort.*

hūm-ānus, a, um, adj. [for hōmĭn-ānus; fr. hōmo, hōmĭn-is] *Of, or belonging to, a man* or *men*; *human. Polished, civilized, refined.*

hŭm-ĭlis, ĭle, adj. [hūm-us, "the ground"] *Low, lowly, humble.*

I.

I-bi, adv. [pronominal root I.] *In that place, there.*

ĭ-dem, ĕădem, ĭ-dem (Gen. ējusdem; Dat. ēidem), pron. dem. [pronominal root I, with demonstrative suffix dem] *The same.* As Subst. n.: *The same thing.*

ĭdōnĕus, a, um, adj. *Fit, suitable, convenient.*

i-gnōsco, gnōvi, gnōtum, gnoscĕre, 3. v. a. and n. [for ingnosco; fr. in, "not"; gnosco (=nosco), "to know"] *To pardon, forgive, overlook.*

i-gnōtus, gnōta, gnōtum, adj. [for in-gnōtus; fr. in, "not"; gnōtus (=nōtus, "known"] *Not known, unknown.*

ĭl-le, la, lud (Gen. illius; Dat. illi), pron. adj. [for is-le; fr. is] *That.* As Subst. of all genders and both numbers: *That person* or *thing; he, she, it.*

ĭl-līco, adv. [for in-loco; fr. in, "in"; loco, abl. of locus, "place"] *Forthwith, immediately.*

ĭl-līgo, ligāvi, ligātum, ligāre, 1 v. a. [for in-ligo; fr. in, "on"; ligo, "to bind"] *To bind* or *tie on, to fasten.*

ĭll-o, adv. [prob. adverbial Acc. ill-om =ill-um; fr. ille] *To that place, thither. To that end, thereto:* eodem illo, *to that same end* or *point.*

imber, bris. m. *A heavy rain; a pelting shower* or *storm* [akin to ὄμβρος].

immānis, e, adj. [in, "not"; root MA, "to measure"; *i.e.*, immeasurably great] *Vast, huge:* immani magnitudine, abl. of quality.

im-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [for in-mitto; fr. in, "in *or* within"; mitto, "to send"] *To send in* or *within. To let in, sink.*

im-mortālis, mortāle, adj. [for in-mortālis; fr, in, "not"; mortālis, "mortal"] *Immortal, undying.*

impĕdi-mentum, menti, n. [impedi-o] Plur.: *The baggage* of troops.

im-pĕd-īo, īvi *or* ĭi, ītum, īre, 1. v. a. [for in-pĕd-īo; fr. in, "in": pes, pĕd-is, "the foot"] *To hinder, impede.*

impĕdītus, a, um; P. perf. pass. of impĕdĭo. Pa.: Of places: *Difficult.*

impello, pŭli, pulsum, pellĕre, 3. v. a. [for in-pello; fr. in, "against"; pello, "to drive"] *To impel, urge.*

im-pendĕo, no perf. nor sup., pen-

dĕre, 2. v. n. [for in-pendeo; fr. in, "upon *or* over"; pendĕo, "to hang down"] *To overhang.*

impen-sus, sa, sum, adj. [for impend-sus; fr. impend-o, "to weigh out"; hence, "to expend"] Of cost: *Great, large, considerable, high.*

impĕrā-tor, tōris, m. [imper(a)-o] *A commander*, esp. *a commander-in-chief.*

im-pĕrītus, pĕrīta, pĕrītum, adj. [for in-pĕrītus; fr. in "not"; pĕrītus, "skilful"] With Gen.: *Unskilful, unskilled*, or *inexperienced in*; *unversed in, not acquainted with.*

impĕr-ĭum, ĭi, n. [imper-o] *Power, authority, command.*

im-pĕro, pĕrāvi, perātum, pĕrāre, 1. v. a. [for in-pāro; fr. in, "upon"; pāro, "to put"] *To command, order, enjoin, bid.* Impers. Pass.: impĕrātum ĕrat, *it had been commanded.*

im-pĕtro, pĕtrāvi, pĕtrātum, pĕtrāre, 1. v. a. [for in-patro; fr. in, "without force"; patro, "to perform"] *To accomplish, to get, obtain.*

impĕt-us, ūs, m. [impĕt-o, "to fall upon *or* attack"] *An attack, assault, onset. Impetuosity, violence, vehemence, force.*

importāt-ĭtĭus, ĭtĭa, ĭtĭum, adj. [importat-um, supine of importo] *Imported, brought from abroad.*

im-porto, portāvi, portātum, 1. v. a. [in, "into"; porto, "to carry"]: *to import.*

im-prūdens, prūdentis, adj. [for inprūdens; fr. in, "not"; prudens, "foreseeing"] *Not foreseeing*, or *expecting*; *not being aware*; *unaware.*

imprūdent-ĭa, ĭae, f. [imprūdens, imprudent-is, "inprudent"] *Imprudence, indiscretion.*

im-pugno, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre, 1, v. a. [for inpugno; fr. in, "against"; pugno] *To fight against; to attack.* With Object omitted: *To make an attack* or *assault.*

īm-um, i. n. [im-us, "lowest"] *The lowest part, the bottom.*

in, prep. gov. abl. *and* acc.: With Abl.: *In.* With Acc.: *Into. Upon. Against. At. For* [ἐν].

in-cen-do, di, sum, dĕre, 3. *To set on fire, burn* [for in-can-do; fr. in, "in *or* into"; root CAN; akin to κά-ω, "to burn"].

in-certus, certa, certum, adj. in, "not"; certus, "sure"] *Not sure, uncertain, doubtful.*

incĭtātus, a, um: P. perf. pass. of incito. Pa.: Of a horse: *At full speed.*

in-cĭto, cĭtāvi, cĭtātum, cĭtāre, 1. v. a. [in, "without force"; cĭto, "to be set in rapid motion"] *To set in rapid motion, urge forward*: navem incitare, *to propel a ship rapidly forwards*: equum incitare, *to spur on a horse.* With Personal pron. in reflexive force: *To set one's self in rapid motion*: i.e. *to hasten, rush.*

in-cognĭtus, cognĭta, cognĭtum, adj. [in, "not"; cognĭtus, "known"] *Unknown, not known.*

incŏlo, cŏlŭi, no sup. cŏlĕre, 3. v. n. [in, "in"; colo, "to dwell"] *To dwell, reside.*

in-cŏlŭmis, cŏlŭme, adj. [in, in "intensive" force; obsol. cŏlŭmis, "safe"] *Quite safe, safe, in safety.*

in-crēdĭbĭlis, crēdĭbĭle, adj. [in, "not"; crēdibilis, "to be believed"] *Not to be believed, incredible.*

i-n-de, adv. [probably fr. pronominal root I; with n, epenthetic; de, suffix] *After that, afterwards.*

indŭcĭae, (or **indŭtĭae**), ārum, f. plur. *A temporary cessation of hostilities; an armistice, truce.*

ĭn-ĕo, ĭvi *or* ĭi, ĭtum, īre, v. a. irreg. [in, "into"; 1. ĕo] Of a plan: *To form, adopt.*

ĭn-erm-is, e, adj. [for in-arm-is; fr. in, "not"; arm-a, "arms"] *Unarmed.*

ĭn-ers, ertis, adj. [for in-art-s; fr. in, "not"; ars, art-is, "art"] *Sluggish, inactive, indolent.*

in-fĕrĭor, ĭus, comp. adj. infĕr-us, "low" Of situation: *Lower.* Of persons: *Inferior.*

in-fĕro, tŭli, (il)-lātum, ferre, v. a. [in, "into *or* to"; fĕro, "to bear"] *To bear, carry*, or *bring into* or *to.* Of war: *To make upon, wage against.*

infirm-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [infirmus] Of mind: *Fickleness.*

in-firmus, firma, firmum, adj. [in, "not"; firmis] *Not strong, weak, feeble.*

infrā, adv. [syncopated fr. infĕrā, abl. fem. of infĕrus, "low"] *Below.*

in-flŭo, fluxi, fluxum, flŭĕre, 3. v. n. [in, "into"; fluo, "to flow"] Of a river: *To flow* or *run into*; *to empty itself into.*

ĭnīq-ŭĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [ĭnīquus, "uneven"] Of ground, *etc.*: *Unevenness.*

ĭnĭ-tĭum, tĭi, n. [ĭnĕo, "to go into"] *A beginning, commencement, initiative.* Of a locality: *Entrance, first part.*

ĭnītus, a, um, (P. perf. pass. of ĭnĕo, "to go into"; hence, "to begin") *Begun,*

entered upon, commenced. Of a plan, *etc.*: *Formed.*

injĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for in-jăcio; fr. In; jăcio, "to cast"] [in, "upon"] *To cast, or throw, upon, infuse.*

injūrĭ-a, ae, f. [in, "not": jus, "right"] *Unjust* or *wrongful conduct*; *a wrong,* etc.

ĭnŏp-ĭa, ae, f. [inops, Inŏpis, "without means"] *Want, lack. scarcity.*

ĭn-ŏpīnā-ns, ntis, adj. [In, "not"; ŏpin(a)-or, "to expect"] *Not expecting, unaware.*

inquam, v. def. *To say.*

inscĭent-ĭa, iae, f. [insciens, inscĭentis, "without knowledge"] With Objective Gen.: *Want of acquaintance with, ignorance of.* With Subjective Gen.: *Lack,* or *want of information* of a person as to a matter: *ignorance of.*

in-scī-us, a. um, adj. [in, "not"; scio, "to know"] *Not knowing, ignorant* of the cause, *etc., unaware.*

in-sĕquor, sĕquūtus sum, sĕqui, 3. v. dep. [in, "after *or* upon"; sĕquor, "to follow"] *To follow after* or *close upon*; *to pursue, press upon* the fleeing enemy.

in-sĕro, sĕrŭi, sertum, sĕrĕre, 3. v. a. [in, "into"; sĕro, "to bind"] *To insert in, attach to.*

insĭd-ĭae, ārum, f. plur. [insĭd-ĕo, "to take up a position in a place"] *An ambush, ambuscade.*

in-sĭnŭo, sĭnŭāvi, sĭnŭātum, sĭnŭāre, 1. v. a. [in, "into"; sĭnŭo, "to wind"] *To wind,* or *make a way, into*; insinuare se, *to make their way into* or *among.*

in-sisto, stĭti, no sup., sistĕre, 3. v. n. [in, "upon"; sisto, "to set one's self *or* stand"] With Acc. dependent on prep. in verb: *To apply one's self to, adopt, follow.*

in-stābĭlis, stābĭle, adj. [in, "not"; stābilis, "that stands steady"] *Unsteady.*

in stĭtŭo, stĭtŭi, stĭtūtum, stĭtŭĕre, 3. v. a. [for in-stătŭo; fr. in, "without force"; stătŭo, "to set"] Of troops: *To form, draw up.* Of a levy of persons: *To raise. To begin. To resolve, determine.*

in-sto, no perf. nor sup., stāre, 1. v. n. [in, "upon"; sto, "to stand"] *To press hard, assail vigorously.*

insuēfactus, a. um. [perf. part. of insuefacio]: *accustomed.*

institūtum, i, N. n. [in without force: statuo, "to set up"] *A custom, institution.*

in-sŭl-a, ae, f. [for in-săl-a; fr. In, "in"; săl-um, "the sea"] *An island.*

in-tĕg-er, ra, rum, adj. [in, "not"; TAG, root of tango, "to touch"] *Fresh, undiminished, unimpaired.*

intel-lĭgo, lexi, lectum, lĭgĕre, 3. v. a. [for inter-lĕgo; fr. inter, "between"; lĕgo, "to choose"] *To perceive, understand, comprehend.*

in-tendo, tendi, tentum *and* tensum, tendĕre, 3. v. a. [in, "without force"; tendo, "to stretch *or* bend"] Of the mind as object: *To direct, turn, bend.* Without object and followed by Inf.: *To turn one's thoughts to* do, *to be intent upon* doing.

inter, prep, gov. acc. *Between, among*: inter se, *among themselves,* i.e., *mutually, reciprocally.*

inter-clūdo, clūsi, clūsum, clūdĕre, 3. v. a. [inter, "between"; clūdo (=claudo, "to shut")] Of roads: *To close, stop* or *block up.* Of supplies: *To cut off.*

intĕr-ĕā, adv. [for intĕr-ĕam; fr. inter, "between"; ĕam, acc. sing. fem. of is] Of time: *Meanwhile, in the meantime.*

inter-fĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for inter-făcio; fr. inter, "between"; făcio, "to make"] *To destroy*; esp. *to kill, slay, slaughter.*

intĕr-im, adv. [inter, "between"; im=eum, acc. masc. sing. of is] *In the meantime, meanwhile.*

inter-jĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for inter-jăcio; fr. inter, "between"; hence] In Pass.: Of places: *Lying, being placed,* or *situate between* several points. Of time: *Intervening.*

inter-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [inter, "apart"; mitto, "to make to go"] *To leave off,* or *discontinue, for awhile*; *to interrupt* the doing of a thing.

interven-tus, tūs, m. [inter-vĕn-io, "to arrive"] *The arrival,* or *coming on,* of something causing hindrances.

in-tritus, trita, tritum, adj. [in, "not"; tritus, "rubbed"] *Not exhausted* or *worn out.*

inter-pōno, pōsŭi, pōsĭtum, pōnĕre, 3. v. a. [inter, "between"; pōno, "to put"] *To interpose. To arise, occur.*

inter-sum, fŭi, esse, v. n. [inter, "among"; sum, "to be"] ("To be among": hence) With Dat.: *To be present at, to engage,* or *take part, in.*

inter-vallum, valli, n. [inter, "between"; vallum, "the mound" of a camp, *etc.*] *An interval* of space; *distance.*

intrō-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [intro, "within"; dūco, "to lead"; *To lead within* or *inside.*

in-ūsītātus, ūsītāta, ūsītātum, adj. [in, "not"; usitatus, "frequently used"] *Unusual, uncommon, extraordinary.*

in-ūtĭlis, ūtile, adj. [in, "not"; ūtĭlis, "useful"] *Useless, of no use.*

in-vīcem, adv. [in, "according to": vicem, acc. of vicis, "turn"] *By turns, in turn.*

in-vĭŏlā-tus, ta, tum, adj .[in, "not"; vĭŏl(a)-o, "to hurt"] *That must not be hurt* or *injured; inviolable.*

invīto, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To invite.*

invītus, a, um, adj. *Unwillingly, reluctant, against one's will.*

i-pse, psa, psum, pron. dem. [for is-pse; fr. is; suffix pse] *Self, very, identical.* As Subst. m. Sing.: *Himself.* Plur.: *Themselves.*

ir-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, rumpĕre, 3. v. n. [for in-rumpo; fr. In, "into"; rumpo, "to break *or* burst"] Follḍ. by in with acc.: *To break,* or *burst, into; to force one's way into.*

is, ĕa, id, pron. dem [prob. nominal root i] *This, that,* person *or* thing just mentioned. As Subst. Sing. Masc.: *He.* Neut.: *It.* Plur Masc.: *Those just mentioned; they.* Neut.: *Those things.* Abl. Sing. Neut.: ĕo, as abl. of measure with comparatives: *By so much* the more, *etc.*; *the more.*

ĭta, adv. *Thus, in this way* or *manner, so*: ita ut, *in such a way, that. To such a degree, so very.*

ităque, conj. [Ita, "thus": que, "and"] *And thus, and so. On this,* or *that, account*; *therefore.*

ĭtem, adv. *So, even so, in like manner. Also, likewise.*

ĭ-ter, ĭnĕris, n. [eo, "to go," through root i] Of troops: *A march. A road.*

J.

jam, adv. [probably for eam, fr. is] *At this time; now. Already.*

jăcĭo, jēci, jactum, jăcĕre, 3. v. a. *To throw, cast, fling.*

jŭbĕo, jussi, jussum, jŭbēre, 2. v. a. *To order, command, bid.*

jū-dĭc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for jur-dĭc-o; fr. jus, jūr-is, "law"; dĭc-o, "to point out"] *To judge, deem, consider.*

jŭg-um, i. n. [jungo, "to join," root JUG] *The yoke* of draught animals.

jū-mentum, menti, n. [for jug-mentum; fr. jungo, "to yoke," root JUG] *A draught-animal, beast of burden.*

junc-tūra, tūrae, f. [for jung-tūra; fr. jung-o, "to join"] *A joining.*

jungo, junxi, junctum, jungĕre, 3. v. a.: *To join, unite* [akin to Gr. ζυγ, root of ζεύγνυμι; and to root YUG].

jūs, jūris, n. *Law,* whether divine or human. *A right* resulting from law; *a privilege* [akin to Sans. root YU, "to bind"].

jus-jūra-ndum, ndi, n. (Gen.: jurisjurandi, n.) [jus, "a right"; jur(a)-o, "to swear"] *An oath.*

jus-tus, ta, tum, adj. [for jurtus; fr. jus, jur-is, "law"] *Law-abiding, just.*

jŭven-tus, tūtis, f. [jŭvĕn-is, "young"] *The youth,* i.e. *young men.*

L

lăb-or, ōris, m. *Toil, exertion, labour* [akin to root, LABH (whence also λαβ, root of λα(μ)β-άνω, "to take"), "to obtain *or* get"].

lăbōr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. [labor]. *To labour, toil.* Of soldiers: *To be hard pressed; to be in difficulty* or *danger.*

lac, lactis, n. *Milk* [prob. for mlact, akin to root MELG, "to rub, to stroke"; and so, "the thing rubbed *or* stroked," *i.e.* "to milk," from the udder; also akin to γάλα, γάλακτ-ος].

lăc-esso, essīvi *or* essĭi, essī-tum, essĕre, 3. v. a. intens. *To fall upon, attack, assail* [akin to root DAK (whence also δακ-νω), "to bite"].

lăcus, ūs, m. *A lake,* as a large body of water in a natural hollow, [λάκκος].

laetus, a, um, adj. *Joyful, joyous* [prob. akin to Sans. root LAS, "to shine"; also, "to delight"].

langu-ĭdus, ida, idum, adj. [languĕo, "to be languid"] *Languid, faint, weary,* through fatigue, *etc.*

lā-pis, pĭdis, m. *A stone* [akin to λᾶ-ας].

lass-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [lass-us "weary"] *Weariness, fatigue, lassitude.*

lāt-e, adv. [lāt-us, "wide"] *Widely, extensively, far and wide*: quam latissime, *as widely as possible.*

lāt-ĕo, ŭi, no sup., ēre, 2. v. n.: *To be,* or *lie hid*; *to be concealed. To escape notice* or *observation* [akin to λαθ, root of λα(ν)θ-άνω].

lāt-ĭtūdo ĭtūdĭnis, f. [lātus, "wide, broad"] *Width, breadth.*

latr-o, ōnis, m. *A robber, bandit,* [λάτρ-ις].

lātus, ĕris, n. [prob. akin to lātus, "wide"] Of an army: *The flank.*

laus, laudis, f. *Praise* [prob. akin to Gr. κλυ-ω, "to hear"; and so, "that which one hears "of one's self," in a good sense].

lăvo, lāvāvi *and* lāvi, lāvātum *and* lōtum, lāvāre, 1. v. a. *To wash, bathe,* some object. Pass. in reflexive.

lēgā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [lĕg(a)-o, "to send on an embassy"] *An embassy. The persons attached to an embassy; delegates.*

lēgā-tus, ti. m. [id] *An ambassador. A delegate or commissioner.* Milit. t. t.: *A lieutenant-general; a lieutenant.*

lēg-ĭo, iōnis, f. [lĕg-o, "to levy or enlist"] A Roman *legion,* consisting of 10 cohorts of infantry, and 300 cavalry.

lēgĭōn-ārĭus, ārĭa, ārĭum, adj. [lĕgĭon, lēgiōn-is] *Of,* or *belonging to, a legion; legionary.*

lēnis, e, adj. *smooth, soft.*

lĭben-ter, adv. [for libent-ter; fr. libens, libent-is, "willing"] *Willingly.*

lĭbĕrālĭter, [liber "free"] *Courteously.*

lĭb-ĕri, ōrum, m. plur. (the sing. only in late Lat.) *Children* [akin to Sans. root LUBH, "to desire or love"].

lĭbĕro, āvi, ātum, āre; 1. v. a. [liber, "free"] *To liberate.*

lĭber-tas, tātis, f. [liber, "free"] *Liberty,* or *freedom,* of a people, *etc.*

lĭc-ĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre (usually only in 3rd pers. sing. and inf. mood), 2. v. n. *To be allowable; to be permitted* or *lawful.*

lĭng-ŭla, ŭlae, f. dim. [lingua, "a tongue"] *A little tongue* of land.

līnum, i, n. *Flax* [λινον].

lĭtĕra, ae, f.: Sing.: *A letter* of the alphabet. Plur.: *A letter, epistle.*

lī-tus, tŏris, n. [prob. LI, root of LI-no, "to overspread"] *The sea-shore, beach, strand.*

lŏc-us, i, m. (plur. lŏci, m., and lŏca, n.) *A place.* Milit. t. t.: *A post* or *position* [probably akin to root λεχ, whence λεγω, "to put, place."]

long-e, adv. [long-us, "long"; hence, "far off"] *Far off, at a distance*:—Comp.: *Too far off. Very far.* With Comparative and Superlative words: *By far; very much, greatly.*

long-inqu-us (trisyll.), a, um, adj. [for long-hinc-vus; fr. long-us, "long"; hinc, "hence"] *Far off, distant, remote.*

longŭrĭus, ĭi, m. *A long pole.*

long-us, a. um, adj. *Long.*

lū-na, nae, f. [for luc-na; fr. lūc-ĕo, "to shine"] *The moon.*

lux, lūcis, f. [for luc-s; fr. lūc-ĕo, "to shine"] *Light:* prima lux, *the early dawn, day-break.*

M.

māchīnā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [māchĭn(a)-or, "to contrive"] ("A contriving"; hence, "a contrivance"; hence) *A machine, engine.*

măg-is, comp. adv. [MAG, root of magnus] *More; in a greater* or *higher degree.* Sup.: maxĭme (=mag-sĭme).

magn-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [magn-us] *Greatness, magnitude.*

mag-nus, na, num, adj.: *Great, large. Numerous*: in Comp.: major pars, *the majority.* In age: *Great, advanced. Mighty, powerful.* Comp.: major (=măgior); Sup.: maxĭmus (=măg-s-imus) [root MAG, akin to Gr. μεγ-ας Sans. *mah-a,* "great"; fr. Sans. root MAH, originally MAGH, "to be great, powerful."

magn-ŏpĕre, (also written magno opere), adv. [for magno opere; abl. sing. of *magnŭs,* "great"; *ŏpŭs,* "toil"] *greatly, very greatly, exceedingly.*

mājor, us, comp. adj.; see magnus.—As Subst.: mājōres, um, m. plur. *Ancestores, forefathers.*

mājōres, um; see major.

mālăcĭa, ae, f. *A calm* at sea; *a dead calm* [μαλακια].

mālo, mālŭi, no sup. malle, v. a. irreg. [contracted fr. mag-vŏlo; fr root MAG; see magnus; vŏlo; "to wish"] *To choose, rather, to perfer.*

mālus, i, f. *A mast* of a ship [μηλ-εα].

mandā-tum, ti, n. [mand(a)o. *A command, order,* etc.

man-do, dăvi, dātum, dāre, 1. v. a. [măn-us, "hand"; do, "to put"] *To enjoin, command*: constructed with Dat. of person and ut *or* uti with Subjunctive.

mane, adv. *Early in the morning.*

măn-eo, si, sum, ēre, 2. v. n. *To remain, continued* [μεν-ω].

mă-nus, nūs, f. [root MA "to measure"] *A hand. A band* or *body* of men; *a force*

māre, is, n. *The sea.*

măr-ĭtĭmus, ĭtĭma, ĭtĭmum, adj. [măr-e] *Of,* or *belonging to, the sea: sea-; maritime*

mātĕr-ĭa, iae, f. [māter, māt(e)r-is, "a producer"; hence, "a mother"] *Wood, timber*

mātūr-e, adv. [matur-us] *Early, soon.*

mātūr-us, a, um, adj. Of time: *Early.*

maxĭm-e, sup. adv. [maximus] *In the greatest* or *highest degree*; *especially, principally, chiefly.* Comp.: māgis; see māgis.

mĕdĭō-cris, cre, adj. [mĕdĭus, uncontracted gen. mĕdĭo-i, "middle" *Moderate*: non mediocris, *not moderate*, i.e. *very great, excessive.*

mĕd-ĭus, ĭa, ĭum, adj. *That is in the middle* or *midst*; *middle*, etc. *The middle of* that denoted the subst. to which it is in attribution: in mediam aciem, *into the middle of the army drawn up for battle*, i.e. *into the space between the first and third lines* [akin to μέσ-ος].

membrum, i, N. n. *A limb, member.*

mĕ-mĭn-i, isse, v. defect. *To bear in mind, recollect, remember* [changed fr. men-mĕn-i, reduplicated fr. root MEN, akin to root MAN, "to think"].

mĕmŏr-ĭa, iae, f. [mĕmŏr, "mindful"] *Memory, recollection, remembrance.*

men-s, tis, f. [root MEN; see memini] *The mind*, as being the origin of thought.

mercā-tor, tōris, m. [merce(a or, "to trade") *A trader, merchant.*

mĕto, messŭi, messum, mĕtĕre, 3. v. a. *To mow* or *reap*; *to cut down* the crops [prob. ἀ-μά-ω].

mĕtus, ūs, m. *Fear, dread.*

mĕ-us, a, um, pron. possess. [me] *Of*, or *belonging to, me*; *my, mine.*

mīles, ĭtis, comm. gen. *A soldier.*

mīlĭt-āris, āre, adj. [mīles, mīlĭt-is] *Of*, or *belonging to, a soldier*; *military*: res militaris, *military affairs.*

mill-e, rum, adj. indecl. *A thousand*; mille passŭs, *a thousand paces*, i.e. a *(Roman) mile*, estimated at 1618 English yards, or 142 yards less than an English mile. As Subst.: millĭa, ĭum, n. plur. *A thousand* [akin to χιλ-ιοι].

mĭnĭm-e, sup. adj. [mĭnŭs] *In the least degree; by no means.*

mĭnĭm-um, sup. adj. [adverbial neut. of mĭnŭs] *Very little, very slightly, not at all.* Phrase: Non minimum, *Particularly, especially, in the highest degree.*

mĭn-ŭo, ŭi, ūtum, ŭĕre, 3. v. n. *To grow*, or *become, less*: minuente aestu, *at the ebb of the tide* [root MIN, akin to mĭnor and μιν-ύθω].

mĭn-us, comp. adj. [adverbial neut. of mĭnor, "less"] *Less*; *in a less*, or *smaller degree*, etc.; *not so much* To make an emphatic negation: *Not at all, by no means.*

mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. *To let suffer*, or *allow to go. To cause to go, to send.* Of a missile: *To cast, hurl, launch.*

mōbĭl-ĭter, adv. [mōbĭl-is, "that can be easily roused"; hence] *By sudden impulse, hastily*, etc.

mōbĭl-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [mōbĭl-is, "easily moved"; hence, of persons, "quick, rapid"] *Quickness, rapidity, speed.*

mo-bĭlis, bĭle, adj. [for movbĭlis; fr. mŏv-ĕo, "to move"] Of character: *Changeable, fickle.*

mŏd-ĕror, ĕrātus sum, ĕrāri, 1. v. dep. [mŏd-us, "a bound"] *To manage, regulate*, etc.

mŏ-do, adv. *Only, merely*: non modo...sed ne quidem, *not only not...but not even*: ch. 4.

mŏ-dus, di. m. *A measure* or *standard* by which anything is measured. *Measurement, extent, size. A manner, method, way, mode. Bounds, limit*, etc. With Gen. of pron. either written separately or as one word: *sort, kind*: hūjus mŏdi, *of this sort*; so ējus mŏdi, *of that sort*, etc. [akin to Sans. root MA, "to measure"; whence also μέ-τρον, "a measure"].

moen-ĭa, ĭum, n. plur.] *Defensive walls, fortifications* [akin to ἀ-μύν-ω, "to ward off"].

mōles, is, f.: *A dam, mole, pier.*

mol-lis, le, adj. [for mov-lis; fr. mŏv-ĕo, "to move"] *Easily moved, changeable, fickle.*

mŏn-ĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2. v. a. *To warn, admonish, advise* [akin to root MAN, "to think"].

mon-s, tis, m. [for min-s; fr. mīn-ĕo, "to project"] *A mountain, mount.*

mŏra, ae, f. *Delay.*

mŏr or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. a. [mor-a, "delay"] *To delay*, i.e. *to tarry, linger, remain, stay.*

mor-s, tis, f. [mŏr-ĭor, "to die"] *Death.*

m-os, ōris, m. [prob. for me-os; fr. mē-o, "to go"] *Practice, usage, custom.*

mō-tus, tūs, m. [for mov-tus; fr. mŏv-ĕo] *A moving, motion.* Of vessels, *etc.*: *A movement, evolution.*

mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum, mōvēre, 2. v. a.: *To move, set in motion.* With Personal pron. in reflexive force: *To move one's self*, i.e. *to remove, depart, get away.*

mŭlĭer, ĕris, f. *A woman.*

mult-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [mult-us] *A great number, a multitude.*

mult-um, adv. [adverbial neut. of mult-us] *Much, greatly*: non multum, *not much = but little.*

mul-tus, ta, tum, adj.: 1. Sing.: *Much.* 2. Plur.: *Many.* Comp.: plūs; Sup.: plūrĭmus [perhaps akin to πολ-υς]. Sing.: *Much.* Of time. *Much*, or *far, gone*; multā nocte, *when the night was far gone, late in the night.* Plur.: *Many.* As Subst.: multa, ōrum, n. plur. *Many things.* Comp.: plus; Sup.: plūr-imus [perhaps akin to πολ-υς].

mūn-īo, (old form moen-īo), īvi *or* ĭi, ītum, īre, 4. v. a. [moen-la *To build a wall* or *raise fortifications*, etc., *around*; *to fortify.*

mūnī-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [mūnī-o] *A fortifying, the act of raising fortifications. A fortification, rampart.*

mūr-ālis, āle, adj. [mūr-us, "a wall"] *Pertaining to a wall*; *wall-*: mūrales falcēs, *hooks for pulling down walls.*

N

nam, conj.: *For.* In transitions: *But, though, indeed.*

nam-que, conj. [nam; que] An emphatic confirmative particle: *For, for indeed, for truly.*

na(n)c-iscor, nactus sum, nancisci, 3. v. dep.: *To get, obtain. To meet with, find.*

na-scor, (old form gna-), tus sum, sci, 3. v. dep. *To be born* [root NA = GNA, another form of root GEN = Gr. γεν.; see gens.

nā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [na-scor, "to be born"] *A nation, race* of people.

nā-tūra, tūrae, f. [id.] *Nature*: natura loci, *nature of the place*, i.e. *natural situation*: Adverbial Abl.: Naturā, *By nature, naturally, Natural character* or *disposition*; *nature.*

nauta, ae, m. *A sailor, seaman* [ναύτης].

naut-īcus, ica, īcum, adj. *Of, or belonging to, ships* or *sailors*: *naval* [ναυτικός].

nā-tus, tūs (only found in Abl. sing.), m. [na-scor] *Birth.*

nāv-ālis, āle, adj. [nav-is, "a ship"] *Naval, of a ship.*

nāvīgā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [nāvīg(a)-o, "to sail"] *A sailing*; i.e. the act of sailing; *navigation.*

nāvīg-ĭum, ii, n. [nāvīg-o] ("A sailing"; hence) *A vessel, ship, bark.*

nāv-īgo, īgāvi, īgātum, īgāre, 1. v. n. [nav-is, "a ship"] *To sail.*

nāvis, is, f. *A ship*: nāvis ōnĕrārĭa, *a merchant-vessel* or *transport*: navis longa, *a ship of war* (being of a greater length than ordinary vessels for the purpose of obtaining greater speed) [akin to Gr. ναῦς].

ne, adv *and* conj.: Adv.: *No not*: ne quidem, *not even.* Conj.: *That not*: *lest.*

nec; see nĕque.

nĕcessārĭ-o. adv. [nĕcessārĭ-us, "necessary"] *Unavoidably, necessarily.*

nĕ-ces-se, neut. adj. [found only in Nom. and Acc. sing.: sometimes used as a substantive, and in connection with *sum* or *habeo*) [for ne-ced-se; fr. nĕ, "not"; cēd-o, "to yield"] *Unavoidable, inevitable*, etc. *Needful, requisite, necessary.*

nĕc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. ("To cause to perish"; hence) *To kill, put to death, slay*, [root NAK, "to harm"] cp. νεκυς, noceo.]

neg-lĭgo, lexi, lectum, lĭgĕre, 3. v. a. [for nec-lĕgo; fr. nec, "not"; lĕgo, "to gather"] *To overlook, neglect.* With Inf.: *To make light of* doing; *to take no heed*, or *neglect, to* do. *To overlook, neglect.* With Inf.: *To make light of* doing; *to take no heed*, or *neglect, to* do, *etc.*

nĕg-ōtĭum, ōtĭi, n. [for necōtĭum; fr. nec, "not"; ōtĭum, "leisure"] *An affair, matter, business.*

nē-mo, mĭnis, comm. gen [contr. fr. ne-homo; fr. ne, "not"; hŏmo, "a person"] *No person, no one, nobody.*

nĕ-quāquam, adv. [ne, "not"; quāquam, adverbial abl. fem. of quisquam, "any"] *Not by any means, by no means.*

nĕ-que (contracted nec), adv. *and* conj. [nĕ, "not"; que, "and"] *And not, nor*: neque..neque, *neither..nor.*

neu; contr. fr. nēve.

nĕ-ve (neu), conj. *And not, nor*; *or not* [ne, "not"; ve, akin to Sans. vâ, "and"].

nī-hĭl, n. indecl. [shortened by apocope fr. nĭ-hĭlum—for ne hilum (*i.e.* ne, "not"; hilum = filum, "a thread"); "not a thread"; hence) *Nothing.* In adverbial force: *In no degree* or *respect*; *not at all.*

nĭ-sĭ, conj. [ne, "not"; si, "if"] *If not*; i.e. *unless, except.*

nŏc-ĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2. v. n. With Dat.: *To harm, hurt, injure.* Inf. Pass. Impers.: nŏcĕri, *That harm,* or *injury, (should) be inflicted* [see neco].

noctu, f. [abl. of obsolete noctus = nox] *By night; in the course of the night.*

n-ōlo, ōlŭi, olle, v. irreg. [contracted fr. ne, volo; nē, "not"; vōlo, "to wish"] *To not wish, to be unwilling.*

nō-men, mĭnis, n. [no-sco, "to know"] *A name. A purpose, design, end.*

nōmĭnā-tim, adv. [nomin(a)-o, "to name"] *By name; expressly.*

non, adv. *Not* [ne-unum, "not one"].

non-nĭhil, n. indecl. [non, "not"; nihil, "nothing"] *Something.* As Adv.: *Somewhat, in some degree.*

non-dum, adv. [non, "not"; dum, "yet"] *Not yet.*

non-nullus, nulla, nullum, adj. [non, "not"; nullus, "none"]. *Some.*

nō-nus, na, num, adj. [for nov-nus; fr. nŏv-em, "nine"] *Ninth.*

nō-sco (old form gno-sco), vi, tum, scĕre, 3. v. a.: In present tense and derivatives: *To acquire a knowledge of; to come to know.* In perfect tense and derivatives: *To have acquired a knowledge of; to know* [akin to γνω, root of γι-γνώ-σκω.

nos-ter, tra, trum, pron. poss. [nos] *Our, our own, ours.* As Subst.: **nostri**, ōrum, m. plur. *Our men.*

nostri, ōrum; see noster.

nōtus, a, um: P. perf. pass. of nosco. Pa.: *Known, well known.*

nŏvissĭmus, a, um, sup. adj. [nŏvus, "new"] ("Newest"; hence) Of time: *The last, latest.*

nŏv-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [id.] *Newness. Novelty, unusualness, strangeness.*

nŏvus, a, um, adj. *New*: novae res, *a change in the state, a revolution.* Sup.: nŏvissĭmus [akin to Gr. νέος.]

nox, noctis, f. *Night*; for media nox see medius [see noco].

nūd-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a [nūd-us] With Abl.: *To strip of.*

n-ullus, ulla, ullum, adj. [for ne-ullus: fr. nē, "not"; ullus, "any"] *Not any, none, no.*

nŭm-ĕrus, ĕri, n. *A number. Multitude, quantity,* etc. [akin to νέμ-ω, "to distribute"].

nunt-ĭo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. [nuntius] *To carry* or *bring intelligence about*; *to announce.*

nun-tĭus, tĭi m. [perhaps contracted fr. nov-ven-tius; fr. nŏv-us, "new"; vĕn-io, "to come"] *A bearer of news* or *tidings; a messenger, courier,* etc. *News* or *tidings; a message.*

nū-tus, tūs, m. [nŭ-o, "to nod"] ("A nodding"; hence) *Command, will.*

O.

ob, prep. gov. acc. ("Towards, at"; hence) To indicate object *or* cause: *On account of, for* [akin to ἐπ-ί].

oblīqu-e, adv. [oblīqu-us, "sideloug, oblique"] *Sideways, athwart, obliquely.*

obses, ĭdis, m. and f. [for obsĭd-s; fr. obsĭd-ĕo, "to stay, *or* remain," any where] *A hostage.*

ob-sĭdĕo, sēdi, sessum, sĭdĕre, 2. v. a. [for obsĕdĕo; fr. ŏb, "at *or* over against"; sĕdĕo, "to sit down"] Of a road: *To beset, block up, stop.*

obsĭd-ĭo, ōnis, f. [obsĭd-ĕo, "to invest" a place] *An investment* of a place; *a blockade, siege.*

ob-tempĕro, tempĕrāvi, tempĕrātum, tempĕrāre, 1. v. n. [ŏb, "in accordance with"; tempĕro, "to regulate one's self"] Dat.: *To comply with, to conform* or *submit to*; *to obey.*

ob-tĭnĕo, tĭnŭi, tentum, tĭnēre, 2. v. a. [for ob-tĕnĕo, fr. ŏb, "without force": tĕnĕo, "to hold"] *To hold* or *occupy. To acquire, get possession of, obtain.*

occā-sĭo, sĭonis, f. [for occadsĭo; fr. occĭd-o, "to fall out *or* happen"] *An opportunity, occasion.*

occā-sus, sūs, m. [for occad-sus; fr. occĭd-o, "to set"] Of the sun: *The setting* or *going down.*

oc-cīdo, cīdi, cīsum, cīdĕre, 3. v. a. [for ob-caedo; fr ob, "against"; caedo, "to strike"] ("To strike to the ground"; hence) *To cut down, kill, slay, slaughter.*

occŭpā-tĭo, tĭōnis, f. [occup(a)-o] *An occupation, employment.*

occŭpātus, a, um. P. perf. pass. of occŭpo. Pa.: *Busy, engaged, occupied.*

oc-cŭp-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for ob-cap-o: fr. ob, "without force"; CAP, root of căp-io, "to take"] *To take* or *lay hold of, to seize.*

oc-curro, curri (rarely oĭ-curri), cursum, currĕre, 3. v. n. [for ob-curro; fr, ŏb, "up *or* towards"; curro, "to run"] *To run up. To fall in with, encounter.*

oceănus, i. m. *The ocean*; mare oceanum, (*the sea-ocean*, i.e) *the Atlantic.*

in contradistinction to the Mediterranean, [ὠκεανός].

ōc-ĭor, ius, comp. adj. *Swifter* [ὠκ-ύς].

octo, num. adj. indecl. Eight [ὀκτώ].

oct-in-gent-i, ae, a. num. adj. plur. [for oct-in-cent-i; fr. oct-o, "eight"; (in) epenthetic: cent-um, "a hundred"] *Eight hundred.*

octō-dēcim, num. adj. indecl. [for octo-decem; fr. octo, "eight"; decem, "ten"] *Eighteen.*

octō-ginta, num. adj. indecl. ("Eight-tens"; hence) *Eighty* [octo; ginta = κοντα = "ten"].

ŏc-ŭlus, ŭli, m. ("The seeing thing"; hence) *An eye* [akin to Gr. ὀκ-ος].

ōd-i, isse, v. defect. *To hate.*

offĕro, obtŭli, oblātum, offĕrre, v. a. irreg. [for ob-fĕro; fr. ŏb, "towards"; fĕro, "to bring"] *To present, offer,*

of-fĭc-ĭum, ĭi, n. [for op-făc-ĭum; fr. (ops) ŏp-is, "aid"; făcĭo, "to perform," *etc.*] *A service* incumbent on one; *a duty, office.*

omn-ĭno, adv. [omn-is] *Altogether, wholly.* With numerals: *In all.*

omnis, e, adj.: Sing.: a. Of a class: *Every, all. The whole of; all.* Plur.: *All.* As Subst.: **omnes**, ĭum, comm. gen. plur. *All persons, all.* **omnĭa**, um, n. plur. *All things, every thing.*

ŏnĕr-ārĭus, ārĭa, ārĭum, adj. [ŏnŭs, ŏnĕr-is, "a burden"] *Of* or *belonging to, a burden*: navis oneraria, *a ship of burden,* i. e. *a merchantman*; see navis.

ŏnus, ĕris, n. *A burden, load.*

ŏpīn-ĭo, ōnis, f. [ŏpīn-or, "to think"] *Opinion, supposition, belief, notion, idea.*

ŏport-et, ŭit, ēre (only in 3rd person and Inf. mood), 2. v. n. (*It*) *is necessary, fit, proper, right*; (*it*) *behoves.*

oppĭdum, i, n. *A town.*

opportūn-e, adv. [opportunus, "seasonable"] *Seasonably, opportunely.*

opportūn-ĭtas, ātis, f. [opportūnus] *Convenience, suitableness, fitness. An advantage,*

op-port-ūnus, ūna, ūnum, adj. [for ob-port-ūnus; fr. ŏb, "over against"; port-us, "a harbour"] *Convenient, fit, suitable, seasonable, opportune.*

op-prĭmo, pressi, pressum, prĭmĕre, 3. v. a. [for ob-prĕmo; fr. ŏb, "against"; prĕmo, "to press"] *To crush, overwhelm, overpower.*

optĭmus, a, um, sup. adj. *Best.*

oppugnā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [oppugn(a)-o] *An attack, assault.*

op-pugno, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre, 1. v. a. [for ob-pugno; fr. ŏb, "against"; pugno, "to fight"] *To attack, lay siege to, besiege,* a city.

ŏpus, ĕris, n.: *Work, labour. A work* or *building. A military work.*

ŏpus (only in Nom. and Acc.), n. indecl. *Need, necessity.* As adj. with sum: *Needful, necessary.*

ōra, ae, f. *The coast, sea-coast.*

ōrā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [or(a)-o, "to speak"] *A speech* or *oration.*

ōrā-tor, tōris, m. [id.] *An ambassador* charged with an oral message.

orb-is, is, m. *A circle* or *ring.*

ord-o, ĭnis, m. [ord-ĭor, "to weave"] *Arrangement, order. A line, rank,* of soldiers.

ŏr-ĭor, tus sum, īri, 3. and 4. v. dep. *To rise* [prob. akin to ὄρ-νυμι, "to stir up"].

ornā-tus, ta, tum, adj. [orn(a)-o, "to equip"] *Equipped, supplied, provided.*

ōr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [os, ōr-is, "the mouth"] *To pray, beg, entreat, beseech.*

os-tendo, tendi, tensum, tendĕre, 3. v. a. [for obs-tendo; fr. obs (= ŏb), "before or over against"; tendo, "to stretch out"] *To show, exhibit, display. To declare, set forth, make known.*

ōvum, i, n. *An egg* [ὠΐόν].

P.

pācātus, a, um: P. perf. pass. of pāco. Pa.: *Undisturbed, tranquil, in a state of peace.*

pāc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [pax, pāc-is, "peace"] *To bring into a state of peace* or *quietness*; *to tranquillize.*

pāgus, i, m. *A canton, district* of the Gauls or Germans.

păl-us, ūdis, f. *A swamp, marsh* [hybrid word; for pal-ud-s; fr. πηλ-ος, "clay"; ūd-us. "wet, moist"].

par, paris, adj. *Equal.*

părātus, a, um. P. perf. pass. of pāro. Pa.: *Ready furnished, fitted out equipped.*

păr-ĭ-es, ĕtis m. *A wall of* a house [akin to Gr. περ-ι, "around"; i, root of ĕo, "to go"].

păr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To make,* or *get, ready; to prepare,* etc. [probably akin to φέρ-ω].

par-s, tis, f. *A part, piece, portion, share,* etc. *A quarter, direction.*

part-ior, ītus sum, īrī, 4. v. dep. [pars, partis] *To part, share, divide.*

păr-um, adv. [akin to par-vus, "a little"] *Too little, not enough.* With adverbs: *not enough, not sufficiently*: parum diligenter, *not diligently enough, with not sufficient diligence.*

par-vus, va, vum, adj. [prob. akin to **par-s**] *Small, little.*

pas-sim, adv. [for pad-sim; fr. PAD, root of pando, "to spread out"] *Here and there, everywhere.*

pas-sus, ūs, m. [for pad-sus; fr. PAD, root of pando, "to spread out"] *A step or pace.* As a measure of length: *A pace* equal to five Roman feet; see mille.

păte-ĕ-făcĭo, fēci, factum, făcĕre, 3. v. a. [păt-ĕo, "to lie open"; (e)connecting vowel; făcio, "to make"] *To open,* or *lay open.*

pătĕfio. ĭēri; see pătĕfăcio.

pătĭor, passus sum, pāti, 3. v. dep. *To bear, endure, support, undergo. To allow, permit, suffer* [akin to παθ, root of πάσχω].

pauc-ĭtas, ītātis, f. [pauc-us] *A small number*; *small numbers.*

paucus, a, um, adj. Sing.: *Small,* whether in size *or* extent. Plur.: *Few.*

paul-ātim, adv. [paul-us, "little"; *By little and little*; *by degrees, gradually.*

paul-isper, adv. [id] *For a little while, for a short time.*

paul-o, adv. [Adverbial Abl. of paul-us, "a little"] *By a little, a little, somewhat.*

paulŭl-um, adv. [Adverbial neut. of paulŭs-us, "very little"] *Just a little*; *a very little*; *a little or somewhat.*

paul-um, adv. [adverbial neut. of paul-us, "little"] *A little, somewhat.*

păx, pācis, f. [for pac-s; fr. root PAC, *or* PAG, whence păc-iscor, "to bind, to covenant"; pango, "to fasten"] *Peace.*

pĕc-us, ŏris, n. In collective force: *Cattle*, as tied up in stalls [akin to PAG, "to tie": cp. πήγνυμι; pango · English, *fix.*

pĕd-ālis, āle, adj. [pes, pĕd-is, "a foot"] *Of the breadth of a foot; a foot wide* or *broad.*

pĕd-es, ĭtis, m. [for pĕd-i-ts: fr. pes, pĕd-is, "a foot"; I, root of ĕo, "to go"] ("One that goes on foot"; hence) *A foot-soldier.* Plur.: *Infantry.*

pĕdĭtā-tus, tūs, m. [pĕdĭt(a)-o, "to go on foot"] *Foot-soldiers, infantry.*

pĕd-ester, estris, estre, adj. [id] *On foot, that goes on foot*: **pĕdestres cōpĭæ**, *foot-soldiers, infantry. On,* or *by, land*; *land-.*

pell-is, is, f. *A skin* or *hide.* Mostly plur.: As made of skins: *A tent* [akin to πέλλ-α, "a hide"].

pello, pĕpŭli, pulsum, pellĕre, 3. v. a. ("To cause to go"; hence) *To rout, beat, put to flight* [akin to root PAL, "to go"].

per, prep. gov. acc. *Through, through the midst of. Through, by, by means of.*

per-curro, cūcurri *or* curri, cursum, currĕre, 3. v. n. [per, "along"; curro, "to run"] *To run along.*

perd-ĭtus, ĭta, ĭtum, adj. [perd-o, "to destroy"] *Ruined, desperate, of desperate fortunes.*

per-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [per, "through"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead, bring* or *conduct* to a place. *To bring over* to a view, course.

pĕr-ĕo, īvi, *or* ĭi, ĭtum, īre, v. n. irreg. [pĕr, "through"; ĕo, "to go"] *To perish, lose one's life, die.*

pĕr-ĕquĭto, ēquĭtāvi, ēquĭtātum, ēquĭtāre, 1. v. n. [pĕr, "through"; ĕquito, "to ride"] *To ride through; to ride hither and thither.*

per-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irreg. [pĕr, "without force"; fĕro, "to bear"] *To bear, bring, carry, convey.*

per-fĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for per-făcio; fr. per, "completely"; făcio, "to make"] *To finish, complete.*

perfĭd-ĭa, iae, f. [perfĭd-us, "faithless"] *Faithlessness, treachery, perfidy.*

perfŭg-a, ae, m. [perfŭg-io, "to desert"] *A deserter* to the enemy.

perfŭgĭ-um, i. n. [perfŭgi-o, "to flee for refuge"] *A place of refuge*; *a refuge.*

per-go, rexi, rectum, gĕre, 3. v. n. [for per-rĕgo; fr per, "completely"; rĕgo, "to make straight"] *To proceed, go, set out.*

pĕrī-cŭlum, cŭli, n. obsol. pĕrī-or, "to try") *Danger, hazard, peril.*

pĕrī-tus, ta, tum, adj. [obsol. pĕrī-or, "to try"] With Gen.: *Acquainted with, skilled in.*

per-mănĕo, mansi, mansum, mănēre, 2. v. n. [per, "to the end"; mănĕo] *To stay to the end*; *to continue, endure, remain.*

per-mitto, mīsi, mīssum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [pĕr, "through"; mitto, "to let go"] With Dat.: *To give leave,* or *permission, to*; *to permit* or *allow.*

per-mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum, mŏvēre,

2. v. a. [pĕr, "thoroughly"; mŏvĕo] *To disturb, disquiet. To influence, induce.*

per-mulcĕo, mulsi, mulsum, mulcēre, 2. v. a. [per, "all over"; mulcĕo, "to stroke"] *To soothe.*

per-paucus, pauca, pauoum, adj. [pĕr, "very"; paucus, "little"] Sing.: *Very little.* Plur.: *Very few.*

perpend-īcŭlum, īcŭli, n. [perpendo, "to weigh *or* examine carefully"] *A plumb-line, plummet* : ad perpendiculum, (*according to the plumb-line*, i.e.) *perpendicularly.*

per-pĕt-ŭus, ŭa, ŭum, adj. *Constant, perpetual.* Adverbial expression : In perpetuum, *for ever* [pĕr, "through"; root PET, akin to πετ-άννυμι, "to lie open"].

per-spĭcĭo, spexi, spectum, spĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for per-spĕcio ; fr. per, "thoroughly"; spĕcio, "to see"] *To perceive, observe.*

per-suādĕo, suāsi, suāsum, suādēre, 2. v. a. [pĕr, "thoroughly"; suādĕo, "to advise"] With Dat. *To persuade ; to induce, prevail upon.* Phrase : Persuasum sibi aliquid habere, *to be persuaded of a thing.*

per-terrĕo, terrŭi, territum, terrēre, 2. v. a. [pĕr, "thoroughly"; terrĕo, "to frighten"] *To frighten thoroughly ; to strike with terror, terrify greatly.*

per-tĭnĕo, tĭnŭi, tentum, tĭnēre, 2. v. n. [for per-tĕnĕo ; fr. pĕr, "thoroughly" tĕnĕo, "to hold"] *To reach,* or *extend,* to a place. *To belong, relate* or *have reference* to.

perturbā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [perturb(a)-o, "to disturb utterly"] *Confusion, utter confusion.*

per-turbo, turbāvi, turbātum, turbāre, 1. v. a. (per, "utterly"; turbo, "to disturb"] *To disturb utterly, to throw into great confusion. To discompose, embarrass.*

per-vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vĕnīre, 4. v. n. [pĕr, "quite"; vĕnio, "to come"] *To reach* or *arrive ; to come up,* etc.

pes, pĕd-is, m. ["The going thing"; hence) *A foot* [akin to πούς, ποδ-ός ; and to Sans. *pad,* fr. root PAD, "to go"]

pĕt-o, īvi *and* ĭi, ītum, ĕre, 3. v. a. *To seek* ; i.e.: *To look* or *search after. To beg, solicit, entreat* [akin to Sans. root PAT, "to fly"].

pĭl-us, i. m. (mostly with primus): *The* division of the *triarii* in the Roman army : primi pili centurio, *centurion of the first maniple of the triarii,* i.e. *chief centurion of the legion* [fr. pil-um, "a javelin," and so "that which has the *pilum*"].

piscis, is, m. *A fish.*

plăc-ĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2. v. n.: *To be pleasing* or *agreeable ; to please.* Impers.: With Dat.: Placŭit, *it pleased* or *seemed good to ; it was resolved* or *determined by.*

plān-e, adv. [plān-us, "plain, clear"] *Plainly, clearly, evidently, certainly.*

plānĭor, us ; see plānus.

plān-ĭtĭes, ītĭēi, f. [plan-us] *Level ground ; a plain.*

plān-us, a, um, adj. *Flat, level, plain.* Comp.: planĭor.

plēn-e, adv. [plēn-us] *Fully, completely.*

plē-nus, na, num, adj. [plē-o, "to fill"] *Filled, full.* In superl. of a legion : *Having its entire complement.*

plērumque, adv. [adverbial neut. of plērusque, "the greater part of"] *For the most part, generally.*

plērusque, plēráque, plērumque, ad: [a strengthened form of plērus, "very many"] Rare in sing.: *The larger,* or *greater part of ; the majority.*

plurīm-um, sup. adv. [adverbial neut. of plūrĭm-us] *Very much ; in a very great degree, exceedingly.*

plū-rimus, rima, rimum, sup. adj. [PLE, root of plē-o, "to fill" ; i) connecting vowel ; simus, superl. suffix :=ple-i-simus ; changed as follows : plei-simus, pli-simus, ploi-simus, ploi-rūmus, plū-rimus] Sing.: *Very much.* Plur.: *Very many, most numerous.*

plūs, plūris (Plur. plūres. plūra), comp. adj. [contr. and changed fr. ple-or ; PLE, root of plē-o, "to fill" ; comparative suffix "or"] *More.*

plus, comp. adv. [adverbial neut. of 1. plus] *More.*

poen-ītĕo, ītŭi, no supine, ītēre, 2. v. a. intens. In classical authors only impers.: *It repents* or *grieves one* [poenio = pun-io, "to punish"].

poll-ex, icis, m. [poll-ĕo, "to be powerful"] Of the hand : *A thumb* ; as a measure connected with digitus.

pol-lĭcĕor, lĭcĭtus sum, lĭcēri, 2. v. dep. a. *and* n. [for pot-lĭcĕor ; fr. inseparable prefix pŏt, "much"; lĭcĕor, "to bid" at an auction] *To hold forth,* or *promise, a thing.*

pollĭcĭtā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [pollĭcĭt(a)-or, "to promise"] *A promising, a promise.*

pŏno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, pōnēre, 3. v. a. [usually regarded as contracted fr. posino (*i.e.* po, inseparable prefix with augmentative force : sino, "to let down") "to let down quiet"; but rather fr. a root pos] *To put, place,* or *set.*

pon-s, tis, m. *A bridge* [*i.* root

PATH (= PAD), "to go": cp. pes (= peds); passus (= padsus); πούς, πάτος].

pŏ-pŭl-us, i. m. *The people* [probably for pol-pol-us; fr. πολ-ύς ("many"), reduplicated].

por-ta, tae, f. *A gate* of a camp [probably from root PER *or* POR, found in περάω, "to pass through"; πόρ-ος, "a way"].

portor-ĭum, ii, n. [obsol. portor = portītor, "a carrier"] *A toll* or *impost*, paid on goods carried through a country.

por-tus, tūs, m. [akin to por-ta] *A harbour, haven, port.*

pŏsĭtus, a um: P. perf. pass. of pōno. Pa.: *Placed, lying, situate.*

posses-sĭo, sĭōnis, f. [for possed-sĭo; fr. possĭdĕo, "to possess," *Possession, occupation.*

pos-sĭdĕo, sēdi, sessum, sĭdēre, 2. v. a. [for pot-sĕdĕo; fr. pōt (inseparable prefix), "much"; sĕdĕo, "to sit"] *To have and hold*; *to be master of*; *to own* or *possess. To take*, or *hold, possession of.*

possum, pŏtŭi, no sup., posse, v. n. irreg. [for pot-sum; fr. pōtis, "able"; sum, "to be"] *To be able*, or *powerful; to have power* to do, *etc.*, something; (*I, you, he,* etc.) *can*: se plurimum posse, *that they were exceedingly powerful*; quam plurimas possunt, *as many as they are able.*

post, adv. *and* prep. [perhaps contracted from pōne "behind") est] Adv.: Of time: *Afterwards, after, later.* Prep. gov. acc.: Of time: *After, subsequent to.*

post-ĕa, adv. [probably for post-eam; *i.e.* post, "after"; eam, acc. sing. fem. of is, "this," "that"] *After this* or *that*; *afterwards* In combination with quam, or as one word: *After that.*

postĕā-quam; see postea.

post-ĕrus, ĕra, ĕrum, adj. [post] *Coming after, following, next.*

post-quam, adv. (also written as two words, post quam) [post, "after": quam, "that"] *After that, when.*

pŏtes-tas, tātis, f. [for pōtent-tas; fr. pŏtens, pōtent-is, "powerful"] *Power. A possibility, opportunity*: potes-tatem facere, *to give*, or *prcsent, an opportunity.*

pŏt-ĭor, ītus sum, īri, 4. v. dep. [pŏtis, "powerful"] With Abl.: *To become master of*; *to obtain, get possession of.*

postr-ī-dĭe, adv. [contr. fr. postĕr-ī-dĭe; *i.e.* postĕr-o dĭe; the respective ablatives of postĕr-us, "following"; dĭes, "day"; with (i) connecting vowel] *On the day after, on the following day, on the morrow.*

postŭlā-tum, ti, n. [postul(a)-o] Mostly plur.: *A thing demanded; a demand.*

postŭlo, āvi, ātum, āre, 4. v. a. [usually considered akin to posco] *To ask, demand, request, require, desire.*

prae-ăcūtus, ăcūta, ăcūtum, adj. [prae, "before"; ăcūtus, "sharp"] *Sharp towards*, or *at, the end; sharp at the point.*

prae-bĕo, bŭi, bĭtum, bēre, 2. v. a. [contracted fr. prae-hăbĕo; fr. prae, "before"; hăbĕo, "to have *or* hold"] *To give, furnish, supply. To afford, cause, produce, give rise to*, etc.

prae-cep-s, cĭpĭtis, adj. [for praecapit-s; fr. prae, "before"; căput, căpitis, "the head"] Of localities: *Steep, precipitous.*

praecĭpĭt-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [praeceps, praecĭpĭt is, "headlong"] With Personal pron. in reflexive force: *To cast one's self headlong.*

praeda, ae, f. *Booty, spoil, plunder.*

prae-dĭco, dĭcāvi, dĭcātum, dĭcāre, 1. v. a. [prae, "publicly"; dĭco, "to proclaim"] *To proclaim publicly*; *to declare, publish, announce.*

prae-dor, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [praed-a, "plunder"] *To plunder, spoil, pillage*, etc.

praefec-tus, ti, m. [for praefac-tus, fr. praefĭcĭo] *A prefect, commander*, etc.

prae-fĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for prae-făcio, fr. prae, "before"; făcĭo, "to make"] *To set*, or *place, over*; *to appoint to the command of.*

prae-m-ĭum, ii, n. [for prae-ĕm-ium; fr. prae, "beyond *or* above"; ĕm-o, "to take"] *Reward.*

prae-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [prae, "before"; mitto, "to send"] *To send before* or *forwards; to send in advance.*

prae-păro, părāvi, părātum, părāre, 1. v. a. [prae, "beforehand"; păro, "to get ready"] *To get ready beforehand; to prepare.*

prae-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, rumpĕre, 3. v. a. [prae, "before"; rumpo, "to break"] *To break off before* or *in front.*

prae-ser-tim, adv. [prae, "before"; sĕr-o, "to arrange"] *Especially, particularly.*

praesĭd-ĭum, ii, n. [praesĭdĕo, "to sit before"; hence, "to guard"] *Defence, protection.*

prae-sto, stĭti, stĭtum, stāre, 1. v. n. [prae, "before"; sto, "to stand"] *To be superior; to surpass, have the advantage.*

prae-sum, fŭi, esse, v. n. [prae, "before"; sum, "to be"] With Dat. *To be set over; to have the charge,* or *command of.*

prae-ter, prep. gov. acc. [prae, "before"; demonstrative suffix ter] Of expectation: *Against, contrary to.* Of degree: *Beyond, above, more than.*

praeter-ĕā, adv. for praeteream; fr. praeter, "beyond"; eam, acc. sing. fem. of pron. **is,** "this"] *Besides, moreover, further.*

praeter-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [praeter, "past"; mitto, "to allow to go"] *To pass by* or *over.*

prĕmo, pressi, pressum, prĕmĕre, 3. v. a. In war: *To press hard* or *close. To press upon, pursue closely. To vex, harass, beset* with difficulties.

prĕ-tĭum, tĭi, n. *Price, cost* [akin to πριάσθαι, "to buy"].

prī-dĭe, adv. [for prae-die; fr. prae, "before"; die, abl. sing. of dĭes, "day"] *On the day before.*

prīm-o, prīm-um, adv. [prīm-us, "first"] *At first, in the first place.*; quum primum, (*when first,* i.e.) *as soon as.*

prīm-um: see primo.

prī-mus, ma, mum, sup. adj. [for prae-mus; fr. prae, "before"; with superlative suffix mus] Of order: *First, the first.* Of rank, station, estimation: *The first, chief, principal, most distinguished* or *eminent.* Adverbial expression: In primis [also written as one word, imprimis *or* imprīmis), *Chiefly, expressly, particularly.*

prīnceps, ĭpis, m. [princeps, "chief"] *A chieftain, prince.*

prĭor, us, comp. adj. [for prae-or; fr. prae, "before" with comp. suffix or] *Former, prior*; often to be translated *first.*

pris-tĭnus, tĭna, tĭnum, adj. [obsol. pris, "before"] *Former, previous.*

prīvātus, a, um, adj.: *A private person.*

prīus, comp. adv. [adverbial neut. of prĭor, "before"] *Before, sooner*: prius quam (or, as one word, priusquam), *sooner than, before that.*

prō, prep. gov. abl.: *Before. Instead of, in the place of, for. As, just as, for. In proportion to. Conformably to, considering.*

prŏb-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [prŏbus, "good"] *To esteem,* or *regard, as good; to approve of.*

pro-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3. v. n. [pro, "forward"; cēdo, "to go"] *To go forwards, to advance.*

prō-consul, consŭlis, m. [pro, "for, in the place of"; consul, "a consul"] *A proconsul*; one who at the end of his consulship at Rome was appointed governor of a province, or commander of an army.

prŏcul, adv. [pro, "forward": root KEL, "to drive", cp. κελομαι.] Of place: *At a distance, far off.*

prō-cumbo, cŭbŭi, cŭbĭtum, cumbĕre, 3. v. n. [prō, "forwards"; obsol. cumbo, "to lie down"] *To lean* or *incline forwards.*

prō-do, dĭdi, dĭtum, dĕre, 3. v. a. [pro, "forth or forwards"; do, "to put"] *To give up; to betray.*

prō-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [pro, "forward"; dūco] *To lead forth* or *out.*

proelĭ-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [proelĭ-um, "a battle"] *To join battle, engage in battle, battle, fight.*

proelĭum, ĭi, n. *A battle, engagement.*

prōfĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. n. [for prō-făcio; fr. pro, "forward"; făcio] *To profit.*

prŏ-fĭc-iscor, fectus sum, fĭcisci, 3. v. dep. n. inch. [pro, "forwards"; făc-io, "to make"] *To set out, go, proceed.*

prō-flŭo, fluxi, fluxum, flŭĕre, 3. v. n. [pro, "forth"; flŭo, "to flow"] *To flow forth.*

prŏ-fŭgĭo, fūgi, fŭgĭtum, fŭgĕre, 3. v. n. [pro, "before"; fŭgio] *To flee* or *run away.*

prō-grĕ-dĭor, gressus sum. grĕdi, 3. v. dep. [for pro-gradior; from pro, "forth *or* forward"; gradior, "to step *or* go"] *To step,* or *go, forth* or *forward*; *to advance, proceed.*

prŏ-hĭbĕo, hĭbŭi, hĭbĭtum, hĭbēre, 2. v. a. [for prŏ-hăbĕo; fr. prŏ, "before"; hăbĕo, "to hold"] *To hinder, restrain, prevent.*

prō-jĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for prō-jăcio: fr. prō, "forwards": jăcio, "to cast"] *To cast* or *throw forwards.*

prō-mont-ōrĭum, ōrĭi, n. [pro, "before"; mons, mont-is, "a mountain"] *A headland, promontory.*

prom-ptus, pta, ptum, adj. [prōm-o, "to bring forth"] *Ready, forward, prompt.*

prō-nuntĭo, nuntiāvi, nuntiātum, nuntiāre, 1. v. a. [pro, "openly"; nuntio, "to announce"] *To make known, proclaim. To spread* anything *in public*; *to recite, rehearse, deliver.*

prōnus, a, um, adj. Of things: *Inclined downwards, bending forwards* [πρηνής].

prŏpe, adv. *and* prep. [adverbial neut. of obsol. adj. propis, "near"] Adv.: *near.* Comp.: prŏp-ĭus, *Nearer.* Prep. gov. acc.: *Near.* Sup. (for no. 1.) Comp.: prop-ius; (Sup.: proxime = prop-sime).

prō-pello, pŭli, pulsum, pellĕre, 3. v. a. [prō, "forwards"; pello, "to drive"] *To drive forwards* or *before one's self.*

prŏpinqu-ĭtas, ātis, f. [prŏpinquus] *Neighbourhood.*

prŏp-inqu-us, a, um, adj. [for prŏphinc-us; fr. prŏp-e; hinc, "from this place"] *Near, neighbourhood, nigh at hand, close.*

prŏpĭus; see prope.

prō-pōno, pōsŭi, pōsĭtum, pōnĕre, 3. v. a. [pro, "before"; pōno, "to put"] *To put place,* or *set before* a person; *to mention, make known, show.*

prop-ter, prep. gov. acc. [obsolete adj. prŏp-is, "near"] *On account,* or *by reason, of*; *because of.*

proptĕr-ĕā, adv. [for propter-eam: fr. propter; eam, acc. sing. fem. of is, "this or that"] *On this,* or *that, account*; *therefore*: propterea quod, *because that.*

prōra, ae, f. *The fore part of a ship; the prow* (πρώρα).

pro-rŭo, rŭi, rūtum, rŭĕre, 3. v. a. [pro, "in front"; rŭo, "to cast down"] *To overthrow, throw down.*

prō-sĕquor, sĕquūtus *or* sĕcūtus sum, sĕqui, 3. v. dep. [prō, "forwards"; sĕquor, "to follow"] *To follow after, pursue.*

prō-vĕho, vexi, vectum, vĕhĕre, 3. v. a. [pro, "forwards"; vĕho, "to carry"] *To carry forwards.*

prō-vĭdĕo, vīdi, visum, vīdēre, 2. v. n. *and* a. [pro; vīdĕo, "to see"] Neut.: [prō, "forwards *or* before"] *To take care.* Impers Pass.: provisum erat (esset), *Care had been taken:* with de, at ch. 3; with Dat. at ch. 18. Act.: [prō, "beforehand"] *To make provision,* or *preparation, for; to provide for.*

Prōvincĭa, ae, f. ("A province"; hence, as applied to Gaul) *The* Roman *province* of Gaul; called in later times Gallia Braccata, and Gallia Narbōnensis.

proxīm-e, sup. adv. [proxĭm-us] *Very recently, shortly before.*

proxĭmus, a um, sup. adj. [= procsĭmus, for prop-simus; for obsol. propis, "near"; superlative suffix simus] Of place: *Nearest, next, very near* or *close*: with Dat. and Acc. Of time: *The next,* whether before or after; *the following.*

publĭc-ē, adv. [publĭc-us, "public"] *Publicly.*

pŭ-er, ĕri, m. *A boy, lad* [root PU, "to beget": cp. παῖς].

pug-na, nae, f. [root PUG, whence pung-o, "to puncture *or* stab"] *A fight* hand to hand: *a battle, engagement.*

pugnans, ntis, P. pres. of pungo.— As Subst. m.: *A combatant.*

pūgn-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v.n. [pugn-a] *To fight.* Impers. Pass.: Of a continued action: pugnārētur, *the battle was carried on, the fight was continued.* Of a mere statement of what was done: pugnatum est, *the battle was waged.*

pulvis, ĕris, m. *Dust.*

pur-go, gāvi, gātum, gāre, 1. v. a. [pur-us, "clean"] *To clear* or *free,* from a fault, *to exculpate.*

puppis, is (Acc. *and* Abl. Sing. mostly puppim and puppi), f. *The stern* or *poop* of a ship.

pŭt-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [pūt-us, "clean, clear"] *To deem, hold, think, imagine, suppose.*

Q

quadrāg-ēni, ēnae, ēna, (Gen. Plur. quadragenûm, num. distrib. adj. [for quadrāgint-ēni; fr. quadrāgint-a, "forty"] *Forty each, forty.*

quadr-ā-ginta, num. adj. indecl. ("Four tens"; *i.e.*) *Forty* [contr. fr. quātŭor-a-ginta; fr. quātŭor; (a) connecting vowel; ginta = κοντα = "ten"].

quadr-i-n-gent-i, ae, a, num. adj. [changed fr. quatuor-i-n-cent-i; fr. quatuor, "four"; (i), (n); cent-um, "a hundred"] *Four hundred.*

quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum, quaerĕre, 3, v. a.: *To seek. To ask, enquire.*

quaes-tor, tōris, m. [quaero, through root QUAES] *A quaestor;* a Roman magistrate.

quam, adv. [adverbial acc. fem. of quis *In what manner, as, how, how much, as much as.* Particular uses: After comp. words: *Than:* see prius. With superl. and possum: *As much* (or *little*) *as possible.* After designation of time: *That.*

quam-prīmum: *As soon as possible.*

quam-vis, conj. [quam, "as"; vis, 2. pers. pres. indic. of volo, "to wish"] Adv.: *As you will.* Conj. *However, although, though.*

quan-do, adv. [for quam-do] *At what time soever; at any time, ever:* si quando, *if at any time.*

quant-um, adv. [quant-us] *As much as, as far as.*

qua-ntus, nta, ntum, adj.: *How great, how much. As great as, as much as;* in neut. with Gen. of thing measured.

quar-tus, ta, tum, num. adj. [contr. fr. quatuor-tus, fr. quatuor, "four"] *Fourth.*

quătŭor, num, adj. indecl. *Four* [akin to τέσσαρ-ες, τέτταρες].

que, enclitic conj. *And:* que..que, *both...and; as well... as; partly,... partly* [akin to τε].

quem-ad-mŏdum (or separately quem ad modum) adv. [ad, "after *or* according to"; with the acc. sing. of qui, "who, which": mŏdus, "manner"] *After what manner, how.*

quĕror, questus sum, quĕri, 3. v. dep. *To complain* [root QUES or QUER, "to sigh"].

qui, quae, quod, pron.: Relative: *Who, which, what, that.* At the beginning of a clause instead of a conj. and demonstr. pron.: *And this.* With Subj.: To point out a purpose, *etc.*: *For the purpose of; that; in order to* or *that; to* With ellipse of demonstrative pron.: *He,* or *she, who; that which.* Quo, abl. sing. neut. with comparatives: *By how much:* ..quo..hoc, *by how much..by so much; the..the.* Interrogative: In indirect clauses: *What, what sort of.*

quī-cumque, quae-cumque, quod-cumque, pron. rel. [qui; suffix cumque] *Whoever, whatever; whosoever, whatsoever.*

quĭdam, quae-dam, quod-dam, pron. indef. [qui (see qui no. 2); suffix dam] *Particular, certain; some* indefinite person *or* thing.

quĭdem, adv. *Indeed, even*; ne quidem, *not even.*

quiēt-us, a, um, adj. [quiesco, "to be quiet," through root KI, "to lie": cp. κεῖμαι] *Quiet, calm, tranquil.*

quī-n, conj. [for qui-ne; fr. qui, abl. of rel. pron. qui, "who, which"; ne = non] With Subj.: *That not, but that.*

quīn-ĕtĭam, conj. [or, as two words; quin, "but, indeed": etiam, "too"] *But indeed to; yea too, moreover.*

quinque, num adj. indecl. *Five* [akin to Gr. πέντε].

quinqu-ā-ginta, num. [quinque, "five"; (a) connecting vowel; ginta = κόντα, "ten"] *Fifty.*

quin-tus, ta, tum, num. adj. [for quinqu-tus; fr. quinqu-e, "five"] *Fifth.*

quis, quae, quid, pron. interrog.: In Indirect questions: *Who* or *what*; i. e. *what person* or *thing.* As Subst. n.: quid, *What thing, what* [τίς].

quis-quam, quae, quum, quic-quam *or* quid-quam, pron. indef. [quis, "any one": suffix quam] *Any, any whatever.* As Subst. Masc.: *Any one, any body.* Neut.: *Any thing.*

quis-que, quae-que, quod-que, pron. indef. [quis, "any"; suffix que] *Each, every, any.*

quis-quis, no fem., quod-quod, *or* quid-quid, *or* quic-quid, pron. indef. [quis reduplicated] *Whatever, whatsoever,* person *or* thing.

qui-vis, quae-vis, quod-vis, pron. indef. [qui, "who"; vis, 2. pers. sing. of volo] *Who,* or *what, you please* or *will*; *any whatever.*

quo, adv. [for quo-m, old form of quem, acc. masc. sing of qui, "who"] *Whither, where. To the end that, in order that, so that, that.*

quŏ-ad, adv. [quom-ad; fr. quom (see 1. quo); prep. ad] *As long as. Till, until. As far as, to the extent that.*

quŏd, conj. [Adverbial acc. Neut. Sing. of qui] *In that, because that, inasmuch as. That.*

quō-mĭnus, conj. With Subj. after verbs of hindering, preventing. *That... not*; *from* doing.

quŏque, conj. *Also, too*:— placed after the word to be emphasized.

quoquo-versus, adv. [for quomquom-versus; fr. quomquom = quemquem, acc. sing. masc. of quis-quis, "whatever, whatsoever"; versus, "towards"] *In every direction.*

quŏtīdī-ānus, āna, ānum, adj. [quŏtīdi-e, "daily"] *Daily, every day.*

quot, num. adj. indecl. [akin to quot, us, "how many"] *How many. As many as.*

quŏt-annis, adv. (also as two words, quot annis) [quot, "as many"; of time, "each, every, all"; annis, Abl. Plur. of annus, as Abl. of time] *Every year, each year, yearly.*

quŏt-ī-dĭe, adv. [quot, "as many; each every"; (i) connecting vowel: die,

abl. of dies, "day"] *On each* or *every day; daily.*

quum (old form **quom**), rel. adv. *and* casual conj. [for quom=quem, fr. qui, "who"] Relative adv.: *When.* Phrases: quum...tum, *while...so too; not only... but also; both...and.* Casual conj.: *seeing that, since, as.*

R.

răpĭd-ĭtas, ātis, f. [rapid-us, "swift, rapid"] *Swiftness, rapidity* of a stream.

rārus, a, um, adj. *Far apart; here and there; scattered,* or *occurring at intervals.*

rā-tĭo, tionis, f. rĕor, "to reckon," through root RA] *Course, mode of procedure, method.*

rĕbell-ĭo, ōnis, f. [rebell-o, "to renew war"] *A revolt, rebellion.*

rĕcep-tus, tūs, m. [for rĕcap-tus; fr. rĕcĭpio (folld. by personal pron. in reflexive force), in military language, "to betake one's self, *etc.*, back"; *i.e.* "to retire, retreat"] *A retiring, retreat.*

rĕcens, ntis, adj. *Fresh, recent.*

rĕ-cĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, cipĕre, 3. v. a. [for re-căpio; fr. rĕ, "back"; căpio, "to take"] *To take,* or *get, back; to recover,* etc. With Personal pron. in reflexive force: *To draw back* or *withdraw; to betake one's self. To recover one's self.*

rĕ-cŭp-ĕro, ĕrāvi, ĕrātum, erāre, 1. v. a. [for re-cap-ero; fr. rĕ, "back again"; căp-io, "to take"] *To recover, regain, obtain, back* or *again.*

rĕ-cūs-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for re-caus-o; fr. re, "against"; caus-a, "a cause"] *To decline, refuse, shrink from.*

rĕd-ĕo, īvi *or* ĭi, ĭtum, īre, v. n. [red (=re), "back"; ĕo, "to go"] *To go* or *come back; to return.*

rĕd-ĭgo, ēgi, actum, ĭgĕre, 3. v. a. [for rĕd-ăgo; fr. red (=re), "without force"; ăgo, "to lead"] With double Acc.: *To render* or *make,* an object something.

rĕd-intĕgro, intĕgrāvi, intĕgrātum, intĕgrāre, 1. v. a. [red (=re), "again"; integro, "to make whole"] *To restore, renew.*

rĕdĭtus, ūs, m. [re, "back," eo, "to go"]: *A return.*

rĕ-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [re, "back"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead* or *conduct, back.*

rĕ-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irreg. [re, "back" fero; see fero] *To bring* or *carry, back* or *backwards*: pedem referre, *to carry the foot backwards*; i. e.) *to retire, retreat. To relate, mention.*

rĕ-fĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for re-făcio; fr. re, "again"; făcio, "to make"] *To refresh, recruit* persons, as to their strength. With Personal pron. in reflexive force: *To refresh,* or *recruit, one's self* in any way.

rĕg-ĭo, ōnis, f. [rĕg.o, "to direct". *A tract, territory, region.*

rĕgo, rexi, rectum, regĕre, 3. v. a. Of ships: *To guide, direct, manage.*

reg-num, ni, n. [rego, "to rule"] *A kingdom.*

rĕ-linquo, līqui, lictum, linquĕre, 3 v. a. [rĕ; linquo, "to leave"] [re, "behind"] *To leave behind* in a place. [re, without force"] *To leave, go away from, quit. To forsake, abandon, give up.*

rĕlīqu-us, a, um, adj. [relinquo, See above relinquo] *The remaining part,* or *rest, of* that denoted by the subst. to which it is joined. *The rest, the other.* As Subst.: rēlīqui, ōrum, m. plur. *The rest, the others.* rēlīqua, ōrum, n. plur. *The remaining,* or *other, things.*

rĕ-mănĕo, mansi, mansum, mānēre, 2. v. n.: [re, "back," mānēre, "to remain"]. *To remain behind.*

remex, ĭgis, m. [for rēmig-s, fr. rēmig-o, "to row"] *A rower, oarsman.*

rĕ-mīgro, no perf. nor sup., mīgrāre, 1. v. n. [re, "back"; migro "to go"] *To return.*

rĕ-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3. v. a. [re, "back"; mitto, "to send"] *To send back.*

rĕ-mollesco, no perf. nor sup.. mollescĕre, 3. v. n. [re, "again"; mollesco, "to become soft"] *To be weakened* or *enervated.*

rĕ-mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum, mŏvēre, 2. v. a. [re, "back"; mŏveo, "to move"] *To remove, withdraw.*

rēmus, i. m. *An oar.*

rĕnŏvandus, a, um. Gerundive of rĕnŏvo.

rĕ-nŏvo, nŏvāvi, nŏvātum, nŏvāre, 1. v. a. [re, "again"; nŏvo, "to make new"] *To renew.*

rĕ-nuntĭo, nuntĭāvi, nuntĭātum, nuntĭāre, 1. v. a. [re, "back"; nuntio, "to bring word"] *To bring* or *carry, back word*; *to declare, report, announce.*

rĕ-pello, pŭli, pulsum, pellĕre, 3. v. a. [re, "back"; pello, "to drive"] *To drive back* or *away*; *to repel, repulse.*

rēpent-īnus, ina, inum, adj. [repens, repent-is, "sudden"] *Sudden, unexpected.*

rĕ-pĕrĭo, peri, pertum, perīre, 4. v. a. [for re-pārio; fr. re, "again"; pārio, "to produce"] *To find out, discover, ascertain.*

rĕ-porto, portāvi, portātum, portāre; 1. v. a. [re, "back"; porto, "to carry"] *To carry,* or *convey, back.*

rĕ-prĭmo, pressi, pressum, prīmere, 3. v. n. [for re-premo; fr. re, "back"; premo, "to press"] *To check, restrain.*

rĕ-pugno, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre, 1. v. n. [re, "against *or* in opposition"; pugno, "to fight"] *To resist; to make,* or *offer, resistance; to defend one's self.*

res, rēi, f. *A thing, matter, affair* [akin to ῥῆ-μα, fr. ῥέω, "to speak"].

rē-scindo, scĭdi, scissum, scindĕre, 3. v. a. [re, "away"; scindo, "to cut"] *To cut away* or *to pieces; to break up* a bridge, *etc.*

rĕ-servo, servāvi, servātum, servāre, 1. v. a. [re, "back"; servo, "to keep"] *To keep back, reserve.*

rĕ-sisto, stĭti, no sup., sistĕre, 3. v. n. [re, "against"; sisto, "to stand"] *To withstand, resist, make opposition* or *resistance*; with Dat.

rē-spondĕo, spondi, sponsum, spondēre, 2. v. n. [re, "in return"; spondĕo, "to promise"] *To answer, reply.*

res-publĭca, rēi-publĭcae, f. [res: publĭca (fem. of publĭcus), "public"] *The commonwealth, state.*

rĕ-tĭnĕo, tĭnŭi, tentum, tĭnēre, 2. v. a. [for rĕ-tĕnĕo; fr. rĕ, "back"; tĕnĕo, "to hold"] *To hold,* or *keep, back; to detain.*

rē-vertor, versus sum, verti, 3. v. dep. [rĕ, "back"; vertor, "to turn one's self"] *To return.*

rĕ-vincĭo, vinxi, vinctum, vincīre, 4. v. a [rĕ, "back"; vincĭo, "to bind"] *To bind, or fasten, back.*

rĕ-vŏco, vŏcāvi, vŏcātum, vŏcāre, 1. v. a. [rĕ, "back"; vŏco, "to call"] *To call back, recal.*

rex, rēgis, m. [for reg-s; fr. reg-o, "to rule"] *A king.*

rīpa, ae, f. *The bank* of a river.

rō-b-ur, ŏris, n. *An oak; oak-wood* [probably akin to ῥω, root of ῥώ-ννυμι, "to strengthen"].

ros-trum, tri, n. [for rod-trum; fr. rōd-o, "to gnaw"] Of a ship: *The beak,* or *projecting prow.*

rŏt-a, ae. f. *A wheel.*

rūmor, ōris, m. *Report, common talk, rumour.*

rursus, adv. [contr. fr. rĕ-versus, "turned back"] *Back again; again, anew, afresh.*

S

saep-e, adv. [obsol. saep-is, "frequent"] *Frequently, often.* Comp.: saep-ius.

saev-īo, īvi *or* ĭi, ītum, īre, 4. v. n. saev-us, "fierce"] *To rage, be furious.*

sāgitta, ae, f. *An arrow.*

sālu-s, tis, f. [for salv-ts; fr. salv-ēo, "to be well *or* in good health"] *Safety.*

sanc-tus, ta, tum, adj. [sancĭo, "to render, *or* make, sacred"; hence] *Sacred. venerable.*

sarc-īna, īnae, f. [sarc-īo, "to patch"] *Baggage* of a soldier.

sar-mentum, menti, n. for sarpmentum; fr. sarp-o, "to cut *or* lop off," *etc.*] Sing.: *A twig.* Plur.: *Brushwood, faggots.*

sāt-is, adj. *and* adv: 1. Adj. indecl.: *Sufficient*: Gen. of thing measured. Adv. *Sufficiently, enough.*

saucĭus, a, um, adj. *Wounded.* As Subst., m.: *A wounded man.*

saxum, i. n. *A detached portion of rock; a rock.*

scăpha, ae, f. *A boat* or *skiff* [σκαφή (fr. σκαμ-τω, "to dig out"), "a dug-out"].

sĕcĭus; see secus.

scĭent-īa, īae, f. [sciens, scient-is, "knowing"] *Knowledge, skill.*

scindo, scĭdi, scissum, scindĕre, 3. v. a. *To tear* or *pull down* [root scid, akin to σχι-ζω (=σχιδ-σω, "to cleave"].

scĭo, scīvi *or* scĭi, scītum, scīre, 4. v. a. *To know.*

sec-tūra, tūrae, f. [sĕc-o, "to cut"] ("A cutting"; hence) *A mine, diggin s.*

sĕcund-um, prop. gov. acc. [sĕcundus, "following"] *According to, in accordance with.*

sēc-undus, unda, undum, adj. [for sequ-undus; fr. sĕqu-or] ("Following": hence) *Favourable, propitious, fortunate.*

sĕc-us, adv [prob. for sĕqu-us; fr. sĕqu-or, "to follow"] In comp. with nihilo, (*less by nothing*; i.e.) *none the less, nevertheless*; here nihilo is abl. of measure.

sed, conj. [same word as sed=sine, "without"] *But.*

sĕd-ēs, is, f. [sĕd-ēo, "to sit"] *A dwelling-place, abode.*

sem-per, adv. *Always* [akin to Gr.

ὅμ-ος, ὁμ-οῖος, "like"; Sans. *sum-a*, "same," also, "all, entire").

sĕn-ātus, ātus, m. [senex, sĕn-is, "old man"] *The Senate*; i.e. *the council*, or *assembly, of elders.*

sentent-īa, Iae, f. [for sentient-ĭa; fr. sentiens, sentient-is, "thinking"] *A way of thinking; an opinion sentiment.*

sentĭo, sensi, sensum, sentīre, 4. v. a. *To think, consider*: idem sentire, *to think the same thing*, i.e. *to be of the same opinion.*

sē-păro, pārāvi, pārātum, pārāre, 1. v. a. [sē, "apart"; păro, "to put"] *To separate sever, disjoin*

sept-em, num. adj. indecl. *Seven* [akin to ἑπτά].

septen-trĭo, trĭōnis (more frequently plur.) m. [for septem-trĭo; fr. septem; trĭo, "an ox," as that which is employed in tilling the earth] ("The seven plough-oxen"; hence the seven stars near the North Pole, called Charles's Wain, also the Great and Little Bear"; hence) *The North Pole, the North.* N.B.—According to Max Müller (*Lectures on Language*, second series, pp. 364, 365) the Roman idea of "seven oxen" is untenable. He regards "trio" as having been originally "strio"; fr. Sans. root STRI, "to strew *or* scatter," and so "a strewer (of light)"—a descriptive term for a star. According to this view "septentris means "seven stars"]

sept-īmus, Ima, Imum, num. ord. adj. [sept-em] *Seventh.*

sept-ūā-ginta, num. adj. ("Seven tens"; hence) *Seventy* [sept-em; (ua); ginta = κοντα = "ten"].

sĕqu-or, ūtus sum, i, 3. v. dep. *To follow. To follow in pursuit; pursue* [akin to Gr. ἑπομαι].

serv-īo, īvi, *or* ii, ītum, īre, 4. v. n. [serv-us, "a slave"] Of reports, *etc.*: With Dat. *To be the slave of; to have regard* or *care for; to pay attention, to heed.*

serv-ītus, Itūtis, f. [serv-us, "a slave"] *Slavery, servitude.*

serv-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To protect, preserve, keep in safety.*

sesquĭ-pĕd-ālis, āle, adj. [sesqui, "one half more"; pes, pĕd-is, "a foot" in length] *A foot and a half long, wide, etc.*

sex, num. adj. indecl. *Six* [ξ].

sex-cent-i, ae, a, num. adj. [sex, "six"; cent-um, "a hundred"] *Six hundred.*

si, conj. *If* [σι].

sī-c, adv. [for si-ce; akin to hic; with suffix ce] *In this way; so, thus*: *in the following manner.*

sicc-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [sicc-us, "dry"] *Dryness.*

sign-ī-fĭc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for sign-i-fac-o; fr. sign-um, "a sign"; (i)-connecting vowel; fac-io, "to make"] *To mean designate.*

signum, i. n. *A signal.*

silva, ae, f. *A wood, forest* [akin to ἕλϝη].

sīm-ŭl, adv. [fr. same origin as semper]. *Together, at once, at the same time.*

sīne, prep. gov. abl. [akin to sē, "apart; without"] *Without.*

singill-ātim, adv. [obsol. singill-us, dim. of singŭl-us, "individual"] *Individually.*

sin-gŭli, gulae, gŭla (rare in sing.), num. distrib. adj. *Separate, single* [akin to εἷς, ἑν-ός, "one"].

sīno, sīvi, sītum, sīnĕre, 3. v. a. *To allow, permit, suffer.*

sĭ-tus, tūs, m. [si-no, "to place"] *A situation, site.*

si-ve, conj. [si, "if"; ve, "or"] *Or, if, whether*: sive..sive, *be it that..or that; if..or if; whether..or.*

sŏcĭus, Ii, m. *An ally, confederate.*

sōl, sōlis, m. *The sun* [akin to Gr. ἥλ-ιος; Sans. *svar*].

soldūrĭus, Ii, m. *A retainer* of a chieftain; *a soldier* [Keltic word].

sōl-ĭtūdo, ĭtūdĭnis, f. [sōl-us, "alone"] *Loneliness, solitariness: a lonely state.*

sollĭcĭt-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a [sollĭcĭt-us, "greatly moved *or* tossed"] In a bad sense: *To urge, instigate*, etc.

sōl-um, adv. [sōl-us, "alone"] *Only, merely.*

so-lvo, lvi, lūtum, lvere, 3. v. a. [for sē-lūo; fr. sē, "apart"; lūo, "to loosen"] *To loosen, unloose*: solvere navem, (*to loosen the ship*; i.e.) *to weigh anchor, set sail.*

spătĭum, Ii, n.: *Extent. Distance, interval.* Of time, wherein to do anything: *Space, interval* [σπάδιον, Æolic form of στάδιον].

spĕcĭ-es, ēi, f. [spĕcĭ-o, "to see"] *An appearance; a semblance, show, look.*

spĕcŭlātōr-ĭus, Ia, Ium, adj. [spĕcŭlātor, "a spy *or* scout"] *Pertaining to a spy* or *scout*: speculatorium navigium, *a spy-boat, vessel of observation.*

spē-s, ēi (Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plur. only in post-classical writers), f. [for spēr-s, fr. sper-o; as seen by *spèr-es*, an

old Acc. Plur. in one of the earliest Roman writers] *Hope, expectation.*

stăbĭl-ĭtas, ātis, f. [stabilis "steady"] *Steadiness, firmness.*

stă-tim, adv. [st(a)-o] ("By a standing"; hence) *Immediately, at once.*

stă-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [st(a)-o, "to stand"] ("A standing"; hence) Of soldiers: *A post, outpost, station.*

stătŭo, stătŭi, stătūtum, stătŭĕre. 3. v. a. [stătus, uncontr. gen. stătū-is, "a standing position"] *To decide, resolve, fix, determine.*

strĕp-ĭtus, ĭtūs, m. [strĕp-o, "to make a noise"] *A noise.*

stŭd-ĕo, ŭi, no sup. ĕre, 2. v. n. ["To be in haste" to do, *etc.*, a thing; hence) *To be eager* or *very desirous* [akin to σπουδ-ή, "haste"].

stŭd-ĭum, ĭi, n. [stŭd-ĕo] *Eagerness, eager desire.*

sŭa, sŭi; see sŭus.

sub, prep. gov. abl. *Under* [ὑπ-ό].

sub-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3. v. a. [sŭb, "from below"; dūco, "to draw"] Of the vessels of the ancients: *To draw ashore, haul on land.*

sŭbĭt-o, adv. [sŭbĭt-us] *Suddenly, on a sudden.*

sŭbĭ-tus, ta, tum, adj. [sŭbeo, "to come on,"] *Sudden, unexpected. Hasty.*

sublĭca, ae, N. f. *A stake, pile.*

sub-jĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, jĭcĕre, 3. v. a. [for sub-jăcĭo; fr. sub, "under"; jăcĭo, "to throw"] *To throw, place,* or *bring under* or *beneath. To expose* to peril.

sub-mĭnistro, mĭnistravi, mĭnistratum, mĭnistrare, 1. v. a [sub, "without force"; ministro, "to supply"] *To supply, furnish.*

sub-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittere, 3. v. a. [sŭb, "without force"; mitto, "to send"] *To send, dispatch.*

sub-sĕquor, sequūtus sum, sequi, 3. v. dep. [sub, "close after"; sequor, "to follow"] *To follow close after* or *in close pursuit.*

sub-sĭd-ĭum, ĭi, n. [for sub-sed-ium; fr. sub, "behind"; sed-eo, "to sit"] *Aid, assistance, succour.*

sub-sum, fŭi, esse, v. n. [sŭb, "beside, near"; sum, "to be"] *To be beside* or *near; to be at hand.*

suc-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdere, 3. v. n. [for sub-cēdo; fr. sŭb, "behind"; cēdo, "to go or come"] *To go* or *come, after,* or *in the place of; to succeed.*

suc-cīdo, cĭdi, cisum, cīdĕre, 3. v. a. [for sub-caedo; fr. sub, "without force"; caedo, "to cut down"] With accessory notion of damage: *To cut down, ravage, destroy.*

suf-fŏdĭo, fōdi, fossum, fodĕre, 3. v. a. [for sub-fŏdĭo; fr. sŭb, "beneath"; fŏdĭo: "to dig"; hence "to stab"] Of horses as objects: *To stab in the belly.*

sŭi, sibi, se, pron. pers. sing. *and* plur. *Of* etc., *himself; herself, itself, themselves.*

sum, fŭi, esse. v. n.: *To be.* With Gen.: *To be the property of; to belong to* [in pres. tenses akin to ἐσ-μί=ἐι-μί, and to Sans. root AS, "to exist, to be"; in Perf. tenses akin to φύ-ω, φῦ-μι, and Sans. root BHU, "to be"].

summ-a, ae, f. [summ-us, "highest"] *The whole* of anything, as opp. to a part: summa imperii, *the chief* or *sole command.*

sum-mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum, mŏvēre, 2. v. a. [for sub-mŏveo; fr. sŭb. "from beneath"; mŏveo, "to move"] *To drive off* or *away.*

summus, a. um; see sŭperus.

sū-mo, mpsi, mptum, mere, 3. v. a. [contr. fr. sŭb-emo; fr. sŭb. "up"; emo, "to take"] Of labour, *etc.*: *To employ, spend, undertake.*

sŭpĕrĭor, us: see sŭperus.

sŭ-pĕr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. *and* a. [sŭper, "above"] Neut.: a. *To rise,* or *be, above. To prove superior; to surpass, excel.* Act.: *To rise above,* or *higher than,* something. *To overcome, subdue, vanquish. To outdo* a person; *to overmatch.*

sŭper-sum, fŭi, esse, v. n. [sŭper, "over and above"; sum, "to be"] *To remain; to be left.*

sŭpĕr-us, a. um, adj. [sŭpĕr, "above"] Comp.: sŭpĕrĭor, us: Of locality: *Higher, upper.* Of time: *Former, preceding.* Sup.: summus, a, um: Of locality: *Highest. The highest part of* that denoted by the substantive to which it is in attribution. Of degree, *etc., Highest, utmost, very great. Most important.*)

supplĭcā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [supplic(a)-o, "to supplicate"] ("A supplicating"; hence) *A day (set apart) for prayer* whether by way of thanksgiving or humiliation.

supplĭc-ĭum, ĭi, n. [supplic-o, "to kneel down"] ("A kneeling down" for the purpose of punishment; hence) *Punishment.*

sup porto, portāvi, portātum, portāre, 1. v. a. [for sub-porto; fr. sub, "up to"; porto, "to carry"] *To carry, convey,* or *bring up to.*

sŭprā, adv. [contracted fr. original form sŭpĕrā, adverbial Abl. of sŭpĕrus] Of time: *Before, above, previously.*

sus-cĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, cĭpĕre, 3. v. a. [for subs-căpĭo; fr. subs (=sub), "from beneath"; căpĭo, "to take"] *To take upon oneself, to undertake, enter upon, begin.*

suspĭc-ĭo, ōnis, f. [suspĭo-or] *Mistrust, suspicion.*

suspĭc-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [suspĭc-ĭo, "to look at secretly"; hence, "to mistrust"—in which sense it is found, perhaps, only in participles] *To mistrust, suspect.*

sus-tĭnĕo, tĭnŭi, tentum, tĭnēre, 2. v. a. [for subs-tĕnĕo, fr. subs (=sub), "upwards, up"; tĕnĕo, "to hold"] *To support, sustain, maintain. To bear up against, withstand. To check, restrain.*

sŭ-us, a, um, possess. pron. [sŭ-i] *Of, or belonging to, himself (herself,* etc.); *his,* etc., *own.*—As Subst.: **sŭi**, ōrum, m. plur. *Their countrymen.*

T.

tam, adv. [prob. akin to talis, "such"] With adj.: *So, so very.*

tămen, adv. [perhaps a lengthened form of tam, "so"] ("In so far"; hence) *Nevertheless, notwithstanding, yet still.*

tan-dem, adv. [for tam-dem; fr. tam, "so"; demonstrative suffix dem] *At length, at last.*

tantŭ-lus, la, lum, adj. dim. [for tantŏ-lus; fr. tantus, uncontr. gen. tant(o)-i, "so little"] *So little* or *small*; *so unimportant or trivial.*

tantum-mŏdo, adv. [tantum, "only"; strengthened by mŏdo, "only"] *Only, merely,* etc.

tant-us, a, um, adj. *So much, so great*: at ch. 3, in neut. with Gen. of thing measured. *So great.*

tard-ē, adv. [tard-us, "slow"] *Slowly.* Comp.: tard-ĭus.

tēlum, i. n. *A weapon,* whether for hurling or for close quarters; *a javelin.*

tĕmĕr-e, adv. [obsol. temer-us, "by chance"] hence, with neque (=et non) *And not easily.*

tĕm-o, ōnis, m. *The pole* of a carriage.

tempes-tas, tātis, f. [for temper-tas; fr. tempus, old gen. temper-is, as proved by existing adverbial abl. tempĕr-i] Of weather; in a bad sense: *Storm, tempest.*

tem-pus, pŏris, n. *Time* in general [root TEM, akin to τέμνω, "to cut"].

tĕn-ĕo, ŭi, tum, ēre, 2. v. a. *To hold*; *to have in one's possession. To hold* or *keep back.* With personal pron. in reflexive force: *To keep one's self,* etc., *back,* i.e. *to remain.* Of a place: *To occupy.*

ten-to, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a. intens. [tĕn-ĕo, "to hold"] *To try, make trial of, put to the test. To attempt.*

tĕnŭ-ĭter, adv. [tĕnŭ-is, "thin"] (After the manner of the *tĕnŭis*"; hence) *Thinly.*

tergum, i, n. *The back,* whether of man or beast: terga vertĕre, *to turn the backs,* i.e. *to take to flight, to flee.*

ter-ni, nae, na, num. distrib. adj. [tres, t(e)r-ĭum, "three"] *Three each.*

ter-ra, rae, f. *The earth,* as such. *The earth, soil, ground* [prob. akin to Gr. τέρ-σομαι, "to be, *or* become dry"].

terr-or, ōris, m. [terr-ĕo, "to frighten"] *Affright, alarm, terror.*

ter-tĭus, tĭa, tĭum, adj. [tres; see terni] *The third.*

tignum, ni, n. *A beam, pile.*

tĭm-ĕo, ŭi, no sup., ēre, 2. v. a. *To be afraid of; to fear.*

tĭmĭd-e, adv. [tĭmĭd-us]. *In a timid way, timidly*: non timide, *not timidly*; i.e. *boldly, daringly.*

tĭm-ĭdus, īda, ĭdum, adj. [tĭm-ĕo] *Fearful, afraid, timid.* Comp. tĭmĭd-ĭor; (Sup.: tĭmĭd-issĭmus).

tĭm-or, ōris, m. [tĭm-ĕo] *Fear, dread, terror.*

tollo, sustŭli, sublātum, tollĕre [root TOL, whence tŭli; see fĕro] Of a shout: *To raise.*

tor-mentum, menti, n. [for torqumentum; fr. torqu-ĕo, "to hurl"] *A* military *engine* for hurling missles.

tot, num, adj. indecl. *So many.*

tōtus, a, um, adj.: *All, all the, the whole, the whole of* (denoting a thing in its entirety). In adverbial force: *Wholly, altogether.*

trab-s, is, f. *A beam, a timber* [akin to τράπ-ηξ].

trā-do, dĭdi, dĭtum, dĕre. 3. v. a. [tra (=trans), "across"; do, "to give"] *To give,* or *yield up, to surrender.*

tranquill-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [tranquillus, "calm"] Of wind, sea: *Stillness, calmness.*

tran-scendo, scendi, scensum, scendĕre, 3. v. a. [for trans-scando; fr. trans, "across"; scando, "to climb"] *To climb across* or *over*; *to pass,* or *get, over.*

trans-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre.

3. v. a. [trans, "across"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead across.*

trans-ĕo, īvi *or* ĭi, ĭtum, īre, v. a. irreg. [trans, "across"; ĕo, "to go"] *To go across* a thing; *to cross*, or *pass, over.*

transjec-tus, tūs, m. [for transjactus; fr. trans, "beyond": jacio, "to throw"] *A crossing* or *passing over, passage.*

trans-porto, portāvi port-ātum, portāre, 1. v. a. [trans, "across"; portō, "to carry"] *To carry*, or *convey, across* or *over; to transport.*

trans-trum, tri, n. [trans, "across"] *A cross-bench* in a vessel.

trĕ-cent-i, ae, a, num. adj. [for trĭcenti; fr. tres, tr(e)r-ium, "three"; centum, "a hundred"] *Three hundred.*

tres, tria (Gen. trium), num. adj. *Three* [τρεῖς, τρια].

trĭb-ūnus, ūni, m. [trib-us, "a tribe"] *A tribune.*

trī-d-ŭum, ŭi, n. [for trĭdi-vum; fr. tres, tri-um, "three"; di-es, "a day"] *A space of three days; three days.*

trĭ-enn-ĭum, ĭi, n. [for tri-ann-ium; fr. tres, tri-um, "three"; ann-us, "a year"] *A space of three years; three years.*

trī-ginta, num. adj. indecl. ("Three tens"; hence) *Thirty* [tres, trī-um; ginta = κοντα = "ten"].

tri-plex, plĭcis, adj. [for trĭ-plic-s; fr. trēs, tri-um, "three"; plico, "to fold"] *Three-fold, triple.*

truncus, i. m. *The trunk*, or *stem, of a tree.*

tŭ-ĕor, ĭtus sum, ēri, 2. v. dep. With accessory notion of care *or* protection; *To protect, defend.*

tum, adv. *At that time; then* [prob. akin to a demonstr. root το; Gr, το].

turma, ae, f. *A troop*, or *squadron, of horse.*

turpis, e, adj. *Shameful, base, disgraceful.* Comp.: turpior.

turris, is, f. *A tower* [τυρρις].

tūt-e, adv. [tūt-us] *Safely, in safety.* Comp.: tūt-ius.

tut-o, adv. [tūt-us] *Safely, securely, in safety.*

tū-tus, ta, tum, adj. [tū-ĕor, "to see to"] *Safe, secure; free from*, or *out of, danger.*

U

ŭ-bi, adv. [akin to qui] *In which place, where.*

ŭbī-que, adv. [ubi] *Everywhere, in every direction.*

ulciscor, ultus sum, ulcisci, 3. v. dep. *To punish, take vengeance on.*

ul-lus, la, lum, adj. [for un-lus; fr. un-us, "one"; *Any one, any.*

ulter-ĭor, ĭus, comp. adj. [obsol. ulter, "beyond"] *Further.*

ultĭmus, a um, sup. adj. *Furthest; most distant* or *remote.* Comp.: ulterior.

ultĭmus, a, um, sup. adj. *Furthest; most distant* or *remote.*

ultr-o, adv. [obsol. ulter, ultr-i, "beyond"] *On his*, etc., *part; of one's own accord, without being requested.*

ūn-ā, adv. [Adverbial Abl. of ūn-us, "one"] *In company, together.*

u-nde, adv. [for cu-nde = qu-nde), fr. qu-i] *From which place, whence.*

un-dĕcim, num. adj. indecl. [for undĕcem; fr. un-us, "one"; decem, "ten"] *Eleven.*

und-ĭ-que, adv. [und-e; (i) connecting vowel; que, indefinite suffix] *From all parts* or *every quarter; on all sides.*

ūn-ĭ-versus, versa, versum adj. [unus; (i); versus, "turned"] *All together, the whole.*

ūn-quam, adv. [un-us] *At any* (*one*) *time; ever.*

ūn-us, a, um, (Gen. ūnĭus; Dat. ūni), adj.: *One. Alone, only* [εἷς, ἑν-ος].

u-s-que, adv. [akin to qui: with (s) epenthetic; que, indefinite suffix] *Even*: usque ad, *even up to* or *till.*

ūsus, sūs, m. [for ut-sus, fr. ūt-or *Use, employment. Service, advantage, benefit. Practice, exercise. Experience.*

ut, (originally ūti) adv. *and* conj. prob. akin to qui Adv.: *As. Inasmuch as, because, for.* Con.: *That* = *to* with English Inf. *So that. To the end that, in order that. Although.*

ŭter-que, utrā-que, utrumque (Gen. utrius-que; Dat. utrique), pron. adj. [uter "which" of two; "one *or* the other"; que, "and"] *Both one and the other; both, each.*

ŭti; see ut.

ūtor, ūsus sum, ūti, 3. v. dep. With Abl. *To use, employ, make use of To have, enjoy.*

ūt-ĭlis, ĭle, adj. [ut-or, "to use"] *Useful, serviceable, profitable, advantageous* sometimes with Dat. Comp.: ūtĭl-ior.

ūtĭl-ĭtas, ĭtātis, f. [util-is] *Usefulness, serviceableness, benefit, profit, advantage.*

ūtor, ūsus sum, ūtī, 3. v. dep. With Abl. *To use, make use of, employ.*

utr-im-que, adv. [uterque utr-(ius)-que; with adverbial suffix im inserted between que and the theme of the first portion of this compound word] *On both sides.*

uxor, ōris, f. *A wife, spouse.*

V.

văc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. *To be empty, void,* or *vacant*; *to be unoccupied.*

vac-ŭus, ŭa, ŭum, adj. [văc-o, "to be empty"] *Empty, deserted,* etc.

vădum, i, n. [văd-o, "to go"] *A shallow, shoal.*

văg-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [vagus, "wandering"] *To wander, roam at large,* etc.

văl-ĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2. v. n. *To be strong* or *powerful.*

vallis, is, f. *A valley.*

vall-um, i, n. [akin to vall-us, "a stake, palisade,"] *An earthen wall,* or *rampart,* set with stakes, palisades, *a palisaded mound.*

vast-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [vast-us] *To lay waste, ravage.*

vast-us, a, um, adj. *Vast.*

vectīgāl-is, e, adj. [vectīgal, "tribute"] *Of* or *belonging to, tribute*; *under tribute, tributary.*

vĕhĕmen-ter, adv. [for vehement-ter; fr. vehemens, vehement-is, "violent"] *Violently.*

vel, conj. [akin to vol-o, velle, "to wish"] *Or if you will, or.*

vē-lum, li, n. [perhaps for veh-lum; fr. veh-o, "to carry"] ("The carrying thing"; hence) *A sail.*

vēnā-tĭo, tiōnis, f. [vēn(a)-or, "to hunt"] *Hunting, the chase.*

ven-do, dĭdi, dĭtum, dĕre, 3. v. a. [vēn-um, "sale"; do, "to place"] *To sell, vend.*

vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vēnīre, 4. v. n. *To come.* Impers. Pass.: ventum erat, *it had been come* (by them); i.e., *they had come.*

vent-ĭto, ītāvi, ītātum, ītāre, 1. v. n. intens. [vent-o, "to come often"] *To come very often, to keep coming.*

ventus, i, m *Wind* [akin to Sans. VA, "to blow"].

vĕr-ĕor, ĭtus sum, ēri, 2. v. dep. *To fear, dread, be afraid of.*

verg-o (perf. acc. to some versl), no sup., ĕre, 3. v. n. *To bend, turn, incline itself*; i.e. of places, *to lie* or *be situate* in any direction.

vēri-sīmĭlis, sīmĭle, adj. [or, more correctly, two words; veri similis; fr. vēri, gen. of vērum, "truth"; sīmĭlis, "like"] *Like the truth,* ; *probable.*

vēr-o, adv. [vēr-us, "true"'] ("In truth"; hence) *But in fact, but in deed, however.*

vert-o, verti, versum, vertĕre, 3. v. a. *To turn.*

vēr-us, a. um, adj. *True.*

vestīg-ĭum, ĭi, n. [vestīg-o, "to track"] ("A tracking"—"that which is tracked"; hence) *A footprint*: eōdem vestīgio rĕmānēre, (*to remain in the same footprint*; i.e.) *to remain in the same spot without moving the feet*: ch. 2. Of time: *Point, moment, instant.* Adverbial expression: ē vestīgio, *Instantly, forthwith.*

vest-ĭo, īvi *or* ĭi, ītum, īre, 4. v. a. [vest-is, "a garment, clothing"] *To clothe.* Pass.: **vest-ĭor,** ītus sum, īri.

1. **vestĭ-tus,** tūs, m. [vestĭ-o, "to clothe"] ("A clothing"; hence) *Clothing, clothes, dress.*

2. **vestītus,** a, um, P. perf. pass. of vestĭo.

vĕt-us, ĕris, adj. ("That has existed, *etc.*, for years"; hence) *Old, ancient,* etc. [akin to ἔτ-ος, "a year," with digamma prefixed].

vexo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. intens. [=veh-so; fr. veh-o] ("To carry much *or* frequently"; hence, of the result of carrying; "to move violently"; hence) *To harass, ravage, lay waste,* etc.

vĭa (old form vĕ-a), ae. f. [for ve-ha; fr. vĕ-ho, "to carry"] *A way, road,* etc.

vĭāt-or, tōris, m. [vi(a)-o, "to travel"] *A traveller*

victōr-ĭa, ĭae, f. [victor. "a conqueror" *Victory.*

vīc-us, i, m. *A village* [akin ta οἶ-κ-ος, "a house," with digamma prefixed].

vĭdĕo, vīdi, vīsum, vidēre, 2. v. a. Act. *To see.* Pass.: *To be seen. To seem appear* [akin to root VID, "to see"].

vĭgĭl-ĭa, ĭae, f. [vigil-o, "to watch" *A watch* by night.

vī-ginti, num. adj. indecl. *Twenty* [for bi-ginti; fr. bi (=bis), "twice"; ginti=κοντα="ten"].

vinco, vīci, victum, vincĕre, 3. v. a. [root VIC] *To conquer, overcome subdue,* etc. Pass.: **vincor,** victus sum, vinci.

vinc-ŭlum, ŭli, n. [vinc-īo, "to bind"] *A chain, fetter.* Plur.: *Chains, fetters,* i.e. (sometimes) *prison.*

vindĭco, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To avenge a wrong; to inflict punishment*, or *take vengeance, on* a person. Impers. Pass.: Vindicandum (esse), *that punishment should be inflicted* or *vengeance taken.*

vīnĕ-a, ae, f. [vīnĕ-us, "pertaining to the vine"] Milit. t. t.: *A vinea*; a kind of pent-house, mantlet, or shed (built like an arbour), used in sieges by the assailing party to defend themselves against the missiles and the fire hurled from the walls. Its usual length was sixteen feet, and its height eight feet. The sides were formed of wicker work, while the roof was composed of wicker work or planks covered with raw hides, wet cloths, earth, etc., in order to prevent the fire hurled by the enemy from destroying it. Under cover of these *vineae* the besiegers carried on their military operations; either undermining the walls, or making a breach in them by the use of the *aries* or battering-ram.

vīr, vīri, m. *A man* [akin to Gr. ἥρ-ως; Sans. *vir-a*, "a hero"].

vīres; see vis.

virgul-tum, ti, n. [virgŭl-a, "a twig"] *Underwood, copse-wood.*

vir-tus, tūtis, f. [vir, "a man"] *Courage, bravery, valour.*

vis, vis (plur. vīres, ium), f. *Strength, might. Power. Force, violence* [akin to Gr. ἰς].

vī-ta, tae, f. [for viv-ta; fr. viv-o, "to live"] *Life.*

vīvo, vixi, victum, vīvĕre, 3. v. n. *To live* [root VI, "to live"; cp. βιός, βιόω].

vix, adv. *With difficulty, scarcely, hardly.*

vŏlo, vŏlŭi, no sup., velle, v. a. irreg. *To have a wish* or *desire for*; *to wish, desire* [akin to βόλ-ομαι=βουλ-ομαι, "to wish"].

vōlun-tas, tātis, n. f. [volo, "to will"] *Will, inclination.*

vox, vōcis, f. [for voc-s; fr. vōc-o, "to call"] *The voice. A word.* Plu.: *Talk, conversation.*

vulgus, i, m. *and* n. *The multitude* or *mass*; *the common people, mob, populace* prob. akin to *Fόχλος*, "a crowd"].

vulnĕr-o, avi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [vulnus, vulnĕr-is, "a wound"] *To wound.*

vuln-us, ĕris, n. *A wound.*

ADDENDA.

augustus, a, um: adj. *narrow, close, contracted.*

ex-trūdo, trūsi, trūsum, trūdĕre, 3. v. a. [ex, "out"; trudo, "to thurst"]. *To force out, to exclude.*

in-sŭper, [in, "on" or "upon"; super, "above"]. *Over and above, moreover, besides.*

sīmŭlātĭo, ōnis, n. f. [sīmŭlo, "to pretend"]. *A pretence, feint.*

sĭmŭlo, āvi, atum, āre; *to pretend, feign.*

trans: prep.: *across, over, beyond* (gov. acc.)

vīnum, i. N. m.: [*Fοῖνος*, "wine"]. *Wine.*

SHORT EXERCISES

BASED ON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, B. IV.

I.

1. During the succeeding year a great number of the Tenchtheri crossed the river Rhine. 2. They cross this river not far from the place where the river flows into the sea. 3. For several years the Suevi had harrassed the Tenchtheri, and had kept them from tilling their land. 4. The Suevi have a hundred cantons, from each of which a thousand armed men are lead out to war every year. 5. The rest of the nation stay at home and maintain those who are in arms. 6. During the next year, those who are in arms now will remain at home. 7. Thus the one class (*hi*) stay at home and subsist on milk and flesh, while the other class (*illi*) are under arms. 8. Since the boys are not trained to any duty, they do nothing against their will. 9. On account of their daily exercise, they become men of extraordinary power. 10. The hides with which they are clothed are so scant that a great part of the body is exposed.

II.

1. They sell to the merchants what they take in war, for they do not import any thing. 2. The Gauls take special delight in their horses, and often obtain them at extravagant prices; the Germans, on the other hand, (*autem*) often use small and ill-shaped ones. 3. Caesar says that the Germans by daily training, make their horses capable of undergoing the greatest fatigue. 4. They often train themselves to leap down from their horses and to fight on foot. 5. It is necessary to train their horses to remain in the same spot, so that they may be able to withdraw to them. 6. They think that nothing is a greater disgrace than to use housings. 7. However few they are, they dare to attack any number whatever of effeminate Gauls. 8. They think that wine should not be imported, because by it men become effeminate.

III.

1. It is supposed to be especial glory that the lands of their enemies should lie waste. 2. A large number of states could not withstand their power. 3. As German ideas go, that state is very large and flourishing. 4. The Ubii are the most civilized of all the states of that district. 5. They have been habituated to the customs of the Gauls because they border on the Rhine. 6. Merchants, too, often have intercourse with them. 7. The Suevi often attempted to drive them out of their territories. 8. They could not be driven out of their lands by the Suevi. 9. The Suevi made them tributaries and reduced them to a state of less importance. 10. They were rendered weaker by the Suevi.

IV.

1. The two nations were said to have withstood the power of the Suevi for several years. 2. The Menapii, alarmed at the approach of the Usipetes and Tenchtheri, stationed garrisons on this side of the Rhine. 3. These nations wandered about Germany for three years after they were expelled from their territories. 4. They were so terrified by the approach of this host that they left their lands which they possessed. 5. Having tried every resource they pretended to return to their own abodes. 6. They were unable to cross the Rhine on account of their want of vessels. 7. Before crossing the river they seized all the vessels of the Menapii. 8. They crossed the Rhine before the Menapii, who dwelt on this side of the river, were informed of their arrival. 9. When they crossed the river and seized all the houses of the Menapii, they maintained themselves for the greater part of that winter.

V.

1. No confidence ought to be placed in the Gauls on account of their fickleness. 2. They often aim at a change of government and are unstable in forming plans. 3. Travellers are often compelled against their will to disclose to them what they have heard about everything. 4. From what district do you come and what news have you heard? 5. They often repent immediately of schemes they enter into. 6. They are such slaves to idle stories that often the merchants invent news. 7. They often compelled the merchants to tell them where they were going and what they intended to do. 8. The merchants generally gave them fictitious news.

VI.

1. Caesar set out to the Roman army sooner than he was accustomed to do in previous years. 2. The things he suspected would happen had happened. 3. Several states sent ambassadors to the Germans and invited them to set out against the Gauls. 4. Everything has been done which you requested. 5. The Germans were led on by the hope that they would defeat the Romans. 6. When Caesar came to the chiefs of the Gauls, he pretended that h had not heard what they were doing. 7. He quieted their fee'ings by his speech and resolved to cheer hem. 8. He levied from the Gauls a large number of cavalry. 9. In that year he resolved to carry on war against the Germans.

VII.

1. He began to collect a supply of corn and to select cavalry for the war. 2. He set out against those places where he heard the Germans were. 3. When the ambassadors came to him, he was distant a long journey from their camp. 4. We neither refuse to fight, if we are provoked, nor are we the first to make war upon others. 5. We resist everybody that makes war upon us, and we ask for no quarter. 6. This custom has been handed down to us from our ancestors, not to refuse a battle, if we are provoked in war. 7. Let not the Romans allow us to be driven from the lands we possess 8. We yield to the immortal gods alone to whom not even the Suevi can be equal.

VIII.

Caesar thought it best to reply to their speech thus. 2. I can have no friendship with you, if you remain long in Gaul. 3. It is not right that men who cannot defend their own territories should settle down in the lands of others. 4. So great a number of people cannot seize lands without doing harm to others 5. We shall allow you to settle, if you wish, in the lands of the Ubii. 6. In my camp there are ambassadors who complain of the wrongs done by the Suevi. 7. These ambassadors asked aid from Caesar. 8. He granted this request to those who were asking aid from him.

IX.—X.

1. We shall return to you and report what our countrymen decide. 2. We ask you not to advance near our camp. 3. "I," said Caesar, "am not able to grant you this request." 4. A large portion of the cavalry of the Germans had been sent across the river Rhine for the purpose of foraging. 5. When they asked Caesar not to move his camp nearer he thought it was for the purpose of causing delay. 6. I know that Caesar will move his camp nearer if he wishes. 7. Barbarous natives inhabit the large islands made by the Rhine where it approaches the ocean. 8. There are some of these natives that subsist on fish and birds' eggs. 9. The river Rhine, in the days of Caesar, flowed into the ocean by many mouths.

XI.

1. The Roman general on that day was not distant more than ten miles from the camp of the enemy. 2. On the next day the ambassadors of the enemy returned to the camp of Caesar. 3 We earnestly entreat you not to advance further. 4. We beg you to send forward some horsemen to keep your men from fighting. 5. If the Ubii will give us security on oath, we will accept the terms that you propose. 6. Here they assembled on the next day in great numbers to learn about Caesar's demands. 7. Tell the prefects not to harrass the enemy. 8. Caesar meanwhile sent forward men to order the soldiers not to contend in battle. 9. On the next day the enemy assembled in as large bands as possible to withstand the attack of our army. 10. Caesar advanced not more than four miles to obtain water. 11. Do not harrass the army in battle, but stand your ground until they advance to your van.

XII.

1. Though the number of our cavalry was more than five thousand, the enemy made an attack on them. 2. Our men feared nothing because the enemy had not more than five thousand in their army. 3. The enemy made a quick attack on our men. 4. As soon as they had dismounted they stabbed our horses underneath. 5. They did not cease from fighting till they had killed sixty-five of our men. 6. Piso, who had rescued his brother from danger, was himself surrounded and slain. 7. Piso himself fought against the enemy as long as he could, but at length *(denique)* he fell pierced with wounds. 8. His brother, who observed that Piso had fallen from his horse, rushed to his aid, but was slain.

XIII.

1. We must not listen to the ambassadors of the enemy, nor must we receive conditions from those who treacherously carry on war. 2. It was the height of folly to wait till the enemy had formed their plans. 3. Men who have treacherously sued for peace, and then made war without provocation, ought not to be listened to. 4. Caesar knew how great was the fickleness of the Gauls, and he gave them no time to form their plans. 5. The next day in the morning they came to Caesar to clear themselves for having deceived him. 6. It is the height of foll to let go by a single day suitable for battles. 7. I am glad that Caesar retained those elders who had come to sue for peace. 8. All his forces were led out of the camp on that day. 9. He ordered all of the cavalry to follow closely the enemy, so that no time should be allowed them to form their plans.

XIV.

1. He drew up his army in a triple line and quickly completed a journey of eight miles. 2. The rapidity of our advance and the defection of their countrymen threw the enemy into great confusion. 3. Caesar will arrive at the camp before we can tell what is going on. 4. Whether is it better to lead our soldiers against the enemy or to seek safety in flight? 5. The fear of the enemy was shown by their noise and bustling. 6. A battle was fought in this place by the enemy who boldly on that day withstood our troops. 7. All the children and women who crossed the Rhine began to flee in all directions. 8. The cavalry was sent by Caesar to overtake the rest of the enemy who crossed the river. 9. Caesar sent forward his cavalry to pursue the women and children. 10. Among the waggons and baggage a fierce battle was fought by the enemy.

XV.

1. The Germans threw away their arms, abandoned their military standards and rushed out of camp. 2. When they reached the confluence of the Meuse and the Rhine, they gave up hope of further flight. 3. There a great number was slain by Caesar's soldiers who pursued them to the banks of the river. 4. Overcome with fear they cast themselves into the river and perished. 5. We were all safe to a man, only a very few being wounded. 6. Many of the Germans were killed in that battle; but some few escaped in safety to their own land. 7. When our men withdrew to the camp, nearly all were found to be unhurt. 8. Caesar retained some of the Germans in his camp who were unwilling to go home. 9. They said that they wished to remain rather in the Roman camp than to go back to their own land.

XVI.

1. For many reasons Caesar determined that the war should be finished. 2. He saw that the Germans were easily influenced to come into Gaul. 3. When you find out that we have both the ability and the courage to cross the Rhine, you will fear for your own possessions. 4. Some of the cavalry of the enemy had crossed the Rhine for the purpose of foraging. 5. These had crossed over the Rhine into the territory of the enemy and had united

their forces with them. 6. Caesar sent envoys to ask them why they carried on war against him. 7. These who had crossed the Rhine, as I have mentioned above, were not in the battle. 8. We earnestly beg of you to send us aid unless you are prevented by public duties from doing so. 9. Caesar had such a reputation for valour in consequence of the defeat of the Germans that the army of the Roman people was safe from all attacks. 9. They promised that they would give a large number of ships for the army.

XVII.

1. To cross the river in boats is neither safe nor consistent with the dignity of the Roman people. 2. There was the greatest difficulty in crossing the river, because the Rhine, as I have mentioned, is very deep. 3. Therefore, a bridge must be built or else the army must not be taken over. 4. The piles sharpened a little at the lower end were driven in, not vertically, but sloping. 5. The greater the violence of the water, the more tightly are these logs held together. 6. If the barbarians send down trees or boards to knock down the bridge, these things cannot harm it. 7. Such was the strength of the material employed that the bridge resisted the strong current of the river. 8. The greater the force of the current, the more firmly did the materials resist it.

XVIII.

1. Within ten days Caesar built the bridge over the Rhine. 2. All the material was brought together within a few days. 3. The army was led over and a guard was posted at each end of the bridge. 4. After building the bridge he sets out into the territory of the enemy. 5. Ambassadors came to him from several states to ask peace from him. 6. He ordered them to bring hostages to him within a few days. 7. From the time that he began to build the bridge the enemy prepared for flight. 8. They left their lands and hid themselves in the woods to which they carried all their goods. 9. When the enemy asked for peace he told them that he would give it if they would obey him.

XIX.

1. The enemy burned all the villages and houses, and cut down all their corn. 2. Caesar promised that he would aid them in battle. 3. After the Suevi had learned that Caesar was building a bridge, a council was held. 4. They sent envoys in all directions and ordered their people *(cives)* to assemble in one place. 5. They placed all their wives and children in the woods and all who were unable to bear arms. 6. Let all who can bear arms assemble in one place. 7. The place where they were ordered to assemble was about the centre of the country of the Suevi. 8. After Caesar had plundered the Sigambri and relieved the Ubii, he withdrew into Gaul. 9. He spent in all seventeen days on the other side of the Rhine. 10. After this the bridge which he had built was cut down.

XX.

1. A short period of time was left to carry on a regular war 2. In almost all the Gallic wars, the Britons furnished auxiliaries to our enemies.

3. It will be of great assistance to us if only we are able to ascertain what nation inhabits Britain. 4. If we cannot find out how great the island is, still, it will be of great advantage to examine the character of the people. 5. We know very little of the island, for very few persons except merchants go to it. 6. He thought if he should summon to himself the traders from all quarters, he might find out what harbours were suitable for war ships. 7. The sea coast and the districts opposite Gaul were known to the merchants. 8. The time of the year was so short that it was impossible to carry on a regular campaign. 9. When he called the merchants to him, they could not tell the size of the island.

XXI.

1. Caius Volusenus, a tribune in his army, was sent forward with a war ship. 2. Before ordering the fleet to assemble, he directed Volusenus to explore the sea cost. 3. Before sending the ambassadors home again, he made them liberal promises. 4. All his plans were reported by merchants to the Britons. 5. Several states of Britain sent envoys to promise him that they would do all his orders. 6. Commius, whose influence among the Atrebates he regarded of great value, was ordered to go to them. 7. Visit what states you can and tell them that I shall shortly come. 8. I will examine all the places as far as opportunity offers, seeing that I dare not go ashore. 9. He returned and reported to Caesar all that he had seen.

XXII.

1. While ships were being got ready in that district for the purpose of carrying on a war against Britain, ambassadors came to Caesar. 2. The Morini who had made war on the Roman people excused themselves on the ground that they were barbarians. 3. We are unacquainted with your custom but we promise to do all that you order. 4. Caesar levied a large nnmber of hostages from the Morini, because he thought that an enemy who had given hostages would obey his commands. 5. About forty transports will be enough to convey our legions across the sea. 7. To these are to be added the eighteen transports which are detained by the wind from coming into the harbour. 7. What galleys we had besides, we shall leave on the coast of Gaul. 8. Many ships were prevented by the storm from reaching the island. 9 We ordered the lieutenant to send troops against the enemy.

XXIII.

1. These things were arranged by Caesar on that day. 2. At the third watch of the following night he went on board his vessel. 3. He waited at anchor till the weather should be suitable for sailing. 4. It is by no means a suitable place for disembarking, when weapons can be thrown from the cliffs to the shore. 5. Both military science and especially seamanship demand that all commands be executed promptly. 6. After weighing anchor they advanced at a given signal about five miles from that place. 7. They obtained fair weather and moored the ships on an open beach. 8. He collected his officers and told them what he had learned from Volusenus. 9. In that spot they saw on all the hills the forces of the enemy.

XXIV.

1. The barbarians generally employed cavalry and charioteers in battle. 2. They followed our men with all their forces, after they learned of the arrival of the Romans. 3. It was not possible to moor ships of such size in that place. 4. The Romans could not moor their ships except in deep water. 5. The soldiers could not jump out of the ships, keep their footing amid the waves, and fight with the enemy all at once. 6. The enemy, on the other hand, with all their limbs free, could hurl weapons from dry ground. 7. Wholly unacquainted with this sort of fighting, our men were greatly terrified by the enemy. 8. The enemy boldly hurled their darts against our men, and spurred on their horses. 9. All those places were unknown to our troops who were oppressed with their heavy armour.

XXV.

1. The galleys were removed a little from the transports and put in motion with oars. 2. The enemy were dislodged by arrows and heavy missiles hurled from the ships of war. 3. If you do not wish to be frightened by the heavy missiles, fall back just a little. 4. The figure of our ships, the motion of the oars and the unusual kind of engines terrified the barbarians. 5. He at least who carried the eagle of the tenth legion did his duty to the state and to the commander. 6. If you do not jump down out of your ship, you will betray the eagle to the enemy. 7. Let no such disgrace be done; let us all leap down from the ships. 8. They leaped down from the ships and began to approach the enemy. 9. We pray the gods that this battle may turn out successfully for our legion.

XXVI.

1. The enemy fought fiercely for many hours. 2. We could not follow our own standards, but we flocked to any we met. 3. The enemy would surround some as they come out of the ships in scattered groups. 4. The enemy knew all the shoals where our men landed. 5. Darts were thrown from the shore by the enemy. 6. When Caesar observed this he sent up some skiffs and spy boats filled with soldiers as a relief to those in distress. 7. Our men put the enemy to flight, but did not follow them up because they had no cavalry. 8. A fierce attack was made on the enemy by our men. 9. When Caesar saw his soldiers in danger he sent his reserves to aid them. 10. When all the spy boats were filled with soldiers, the Romans soon reached the Island.

XXVII.

1. As soon as the Romans defeated the enemy in battle, the Britons gave hostages to Caesar. 2. When the Britons recovered from the flight they promised to do all that Caesar ordered. 3. Caesar sent forward Commius to Britain, but the Britons seized him after he disembarked. 4. They put him in chains although he had come to them in the character of an envoy. 5. After the battle was fought and peace made, he was sent back to Caesar. 6. The inhabitants asked the Romans to pardon their thoughtlessness. 7. Though you have made war on the Romans, I

am willing to pardon your thoughtlessness, if you give hostages. 8. Caesar levied hostages from all the states of the island. 9. Within a few days we shall give some hostages to you; others will be summoned from the more distant parts. 10. If you lay all the blame upon the multitude you cannot be pardoned by me.

XXVIII.

1. The eighteen ships did not reach the land till four days afterwards. 2. They were seen from the camp of the Romans, but some were carried down to the lower part of the island and others were driven back to the continent. 3. No ship was able to keep on its course owing to the great storm that arose. 4. Some of the vessels were driven back to the same place from which they had started and some cast ashore. 5. On the lower part of the island very many of the vessels were wrecked with great loss to themselves. 6. They started for the continent with night before them, even though the storm was great. 7. When the ships started for the continent, many of them were filling with waves. 8. They set sail at day break and landed at sunset. 9. A great storm arose at sea when the ships were sailing to Britain.

XXIX.

1. It happened that Caesar did not know that the full moon caused very high tides in the ocean. 2. He had the galleys drawn up on shore and the transports anchored. 3. The Romans had no opportunity to lend aid to the ships. 4. On that night many ships were wrecked by the storm. 5 The rest of the ships lost their cables, anchors, and the rest of their rigging. 6. Throughout the whole army such a commotion took place that Caesar did not know what to do. 7. The Romans had no corn in the camp, for Caesar had not provided a supply since he intended to winter in Gaul. 8. All things necessary for building ships would have to be brought from the continent. 9. His ships were nearly all unseaworthy, and could not be repaired at this time.

XXX.

1. After this battle, the chiefs of Britain held conferences among themselves. 2. They learned that the Romans had few soldiers owing to the small size of our camp. 3. The camp of the Romans was very small because Caesar had no baggage in the army. 4. They thought that their best policy was to renew the war. 5. Since the Romans lack horsemen, ships and grain, the best thing to do is to keep them from supplies and prevent their return. 6. If our men were prevented from a return, the war would be prolonged to the winter. 7. They began again to form a conspiracy after they learned that our men had no cavalry. 8. No one will cross over to Britain for the purpose of carrying on war. 9. All the Britons left the camp, and a league began to be formed.

XXXI.

1. When the Britons learned what had happened to Caesar's ships they did not send hostages to him. 2. He suspected that they would not send hostages. 3. From the fact that many of the ships were severely disabled,

he suspected that he should have to use the timber of these vessels for repairing the others. 4. Corn was collected by Caesar from that district because the Romans had not brought a supply of it from Gaul. 5. All things which were of need for repairing the vessels which had been wrecked were brought from the continent. 6. These matters were carried out by the soldiers with the greatest zeal. 7. He lost twelve ships at that time; still he was able to sail to the continent with the rest. 8. Many of the ships were very severely damaged at that time by the storm which suddenly arose. 9. Building material was collected by Caesar for repairing ships.

XXXII.

1. The seventh legion had been sent to forage when Caesar saw a larger cloud of dust than usual in the direction in which the legion marched. 2. In front of the gates of the camp the soldiers on guard saw a great cloud of dust. 3. The cohorts which were on guard at once set out in that direction in which the enemy was marching. 4. Our men were hard pressed by the enemy and with difficulty kept their ground. 5. "Do you see," says he, "a larger cloud of dust than usual in that direction in which the enemy's forces are?" 6. When the forces which were on guard before the gates of the camp had set out, in that direction the other cohorts immediately followed them. 7. While our men were engaged in reaping, the enemy who were skulking in the woods suddenly attacked them. 8. Our ranks were thrown into great confusion because the enemy suddenly attacked our men. 9. The enemy suddenly surrounded our men with many forces. 10. The enemy suspected that our forces would come to that spot to reap the corn.

XXXIII.

1. At first they ride around everywhere and then work their way in among the horsemen when they leap down from their chariots and the drivers withdraw from the battle. 2. Darts are hurled from all sides by the enemy against our troops, and when once they have thrown our men into disorder they fight on foot. 3. The Britons exhibited in battle the activity of cavalry and the steadiness of foot soldiers. 4. They even on a downward slope rein in their horses when at full gallop. 5. In a moment they are able to check their horses even when running at full gallop. 6. They are accustomed to run along the whole length of the pole, and to stand on the yoke. 7. Often have our men seen them on a steep slope rein their steeds. 8. When they were hard pressed by the Romans they had a safe retreat to their chariots. 9. The sheer terror caused by the horses and the rumbling of the wheels generally threw the ranks of our men into confusion.

XXXIV.

1. When our men had recovered from their fear, they thought it was time to provoke a battle. 2. For several successive days the enemy were prevented by a storm from offering battle. 3. There is a great opportunity to free our country for ever, if we drive the enemy out of the island. 4. We thought this a most important time for engaging in battle 5. Our men were not able to leave the camp on account of the severe storms which

followed for several days. 6. He collected all his infantry and cavalry together into one place. 8. What a fine opportunity you will have of driving the Romans from their camp, if only you collected all your forces against them. 8. Our men were greatly disconcerted by the Britons, but at the arrival of Caesar they recovered from fear. 9. They told their countrymen that it would be an easy matter to drive out the Romans, if they would attack them with all their forces.

XXXV.

1. If the enemy are repulsed in battle, they easily escape danger in consequence of their speed. 2. Caesar said that the enemy would escape by flight, as they had done on the days previous. 3. Caesar obtained about thirty horses from Commius Atrebas, and pursued the enemy. 4. The legions were drawn up in battle array in front of the camp. 5. The onset of our men could not be withstood by the enemy who turned their backs in flight. 6. Several of the enemy were slain when they were overtaken by our men. 7. Our men followed the enemy on that day as far as they could. 8. Before the Romans withdrew to their camp they burnt all the houses of the enemy. 9. The thirty horsemen (of whom mention has been made before), pursued the enemy and killed several of them.

XXXVI.

1. The enemy sent ambassadors on the same day to the Roman camp to treat for peace. 2. "I demand," says Caesar, "double the number of hostages I formerly demanded, and I order you to bring them to the continent." 3. "I must not," says he, "expose my ships to an equinoctial storm." 4. Though they set sail at midnight, they nevertheless reached the port in safety. 5. He was not able to reach port with two merchantmen. 6. These two merchantmen were carried down to a lower part of the island. 7. At midnight he set sail for Britain with all the ships. 8. Although they set sail at midnight they nevertheless reached the port in safety. 9. Caesar will obtain favourable weather at daybreak.

XXXVII.

1. Caesar disembarked about three hundred soldiers on that day. 2. He set out to Britain after he subdued the Morinii. 3. This people was induced by the hope of booty to attack our camp. 4. If you do not wish to be killed, lay down your arms. 5. When they had formed themselves into a circle, hastily they rushed with a shout against the foe. 6. All the cavalry was sent by Caesar to aid the Roman foot. 7. The battle lasted for more than four hours and several of our troops fell in battle. 8. Our men slew a great number of the enemy in battle, who threw away their arms. 9. Many of our friends received wounds in that battle.

XXXVIII.

1. These legions were led back from Britain against the Morini. 2. About six thousand men assembled for the defence of the three hundred whom the Morini had surrendered. 3. After our cavalry came in sight, the enemy threw down their arms and fled. 4. We have no place to re-

treat to. 5. The year before, the Morini had used the swamps as a place for refuge. 6. They hid themselves in the swamps; but all the rest fell into the hands of the lieutenant. 7. They cut down all the corn which was in the fields. 8. Caesar decreed a thanksgiving of twenty days. 9. Caesar said that all the enemy withdrew to the thick woods, where they pitched their camp. 10. The houses of the enemy were all burned down by the soldiers of the Roman army, after the battle was fought.

SCHOOL AND COLLEGE TEXT BOOKS.

Plato's Laches—With Introduction and Notes by M. T. TATHAM, M.A., of Balliol College, Oxford ..... 60c.

Public School Speller and Word-Book—New and Enlarged Edition. Part IV. contains Latin and Greek Roots, 272 pages. By G. W. JOHNSON, Upper Canada College ..... 30c.

Quick's Educational Reformers—Preface by W. T. HARRIS..$1.25

Riehl's Culturgeschichtliche Novellen—Pitt Press Edition. Notes and Index by H. J. WOLSTENHOLME, B.A. In one volume with **Schiller's Der Taucher**, Notes by W. H. VANDERSMISSEN, M.A. $1.50

Tennyson's Poems—Complete Edition. Cloth.....$1.50

Todhunter's Algebra for Beginners—By I. TODHUNTER, M.A..60c.

Todhunter's Large Algebra—For use of Schools and Colleges. By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S. Canadian Edition $1.75

Todhunter's Trigonometry for Beginners—By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S. Canadian Edition ..... 65c.

Todhunter's Euclid—For the use of Schools and Colleges. By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S. ..... 75c.

Todhunter's Euclid, Books I., II., & III. .....40c.

HENDERSON'S CLASSICS.

The following Classics, with Notes, Vocabulary, etc.
By JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.

CAESAR'S BELLUM GALLICUM, Bks. I. & II. Notes, Vocabulary, Maps, and Exercises ..... 75c.

CAESAR'S BELLUM GALLICUM, Bks. III. & IV. Notes, Charts, Maps, Vocabulary, and Exercises ..... 75c.

(Also in separate volumes, each 50c.)

CAESAR'S BELLUM BRITANNICUM. With Life of Caesar, etc...50c.

CICERO IN CATILINAM, Bk. I. With Life of Cicero, etc. .....50c.

CICERO IN CATILINAM, Bk. II. With Life of Cicero, etc. .....50c.

VERGIL'S AENEID, Bk. I. With Life of Vergil, etc.....50c.

VERGIL'S AENEID, Bk. V. With Life of Vergil, etc.....60c.

TEACHERS' DESK HELPS.

Exercises and Examination Questions in English Grammar—By M. F. LIBBY, B.A. Second Edition.....35c.

Practical Exercises in English Composition—By H. I. STRANG, B.A. Goderich. Cloth ..... 25c.

Simple Rules in Arithmetic—For use in Second Book Classes. By R. T. MARTIN, Head Master Park School, Toronto.....10c.

Slips of Tongue and Pen—Containing "Common Errors," "Grammatical Points," "Synonyms and Opposites," etc., etc. By J. H. LONG, M.A., LL.B.....40c.

Smith's Language Exercises—For Pupils in 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Book Classes. Cloth .....25c.

Strang's Exercises in False Syntax, and other Forms of Bad English.—For the use of Teachers and Candidates preparing for Departmental & Matriculation Examinations. By By H. I. STRANG, B.A. 35c.

ELEMENTARY CLASSICS.

Homer's Iliad, Book I,—With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by REV. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. ..... 30c.

Horace Odes, Book I,—Notes and Vocabulary by T. E. PAGE, M.A. 30c.

Horace Odes, Book II,—Notes and Vocabulary by T. E. PAGE, M.A. 30c.

Horace Odes, Book III,—Notes and Vocabulary by T. E. PAGE, M.A. 30c.

Livy, Book XXI,—Adapted from Mr. Cape's Edition. Notes and Vocabulary by J. E. MELHUISH, M.A.....30c.

Plato's Euthyphro—With Introduction and Notes by C. E. GRAVES, M.A., Classical Lecturer and late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge .....40c.

Vergil's Aeneid, Book III,—Notes & Vocabulary by T. E. PAGE, M.A. 30c.

Vergil's Aeneid, Book IV,—Notes and Vocabulary by REV. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.....30c.

Xenophon's Anabasis, Book IV,—With Notes and Vocabulary by REV. E. D. STONE, M.A. .....30c.

School and College Text Books.

Freytag's Die Journalisten. — Introduction and Notes by F. Lauge, PhD. Cloth ..... .45

Irving's Sketch Book.—Annotated by F. H. Sykes, M.A.. .60

Row's Practical Language Training.—Containing Suggestions to Teachers. A syllabus of work for Public Schools and Suggestive Lesson Notes ..... .25

Henderson and Fletcher's First Latin Book.—Authorized by Department of Education $1.00

Robertson's Canadian History. (Quebec Edition)..... .25

Selections from Wordsworth--Poetical Literature, 1893, with Life of Wordsworth. Notes, &c., by M. F. Libby, B.A. ..... .90

De Peyrebrune's, Les Frères Colombe and Feuillet, La Fée.—With Notes and Vocabulary by F. H. Sykes, M.A., and E. J. McIntyre, B.A. 1.25

Rosenkranz Philosophy of Education. — International Education Series 1.25

Welsh's English Composition ..... .60

White's Elements of Pedagogy 1.00

Feuillet Le Roman d'un Jeune Homme Pauvre.—Notes by Owen and Paget ..... .70

Labiche, La Poudre aux Yeux.—Notes by L. G. Burnblum .25

Horace Odes, IV.—Elementary Classics. Notes and Vocabulary by T. E. Page, M.A ..... .30

Shakespeare's Macbeth. — Clarendon Press. Edited by Clark and Wright..... .50

Fitch's Lectures on Teaching 1.00

Colton's Practical Zoology ..... .90

Tait's Analysis of English History. — Based on Green's Short History of the English People..... 1.00

Radestock's Habit and its Importance in Education.—With introduction by G. S. Hall, PhD... ..... .75

Baldwin's Psychology Applied to the Art of Teaching.—International Education Series 1.25

Gill's Systems of Education 1.25

Compayré's History of Pedagogy.—With introduction and Notes by W. H. Payne, A.M..... 1.50

Sully's Teachers' Handbook of Psychology 1.25

Hall & Knight's Elementary Algebra for Schools 1.00

Laurie's Language and Linguistic Method 1.00

Collins' (J. Churtin) Study of English Literature 1.25